

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO **SOUTH AFRICA** 2022/23



government
communications

Department:
Government Communication and Information System
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA





CONTENTS



OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
SOUTH AFRICA
2022/23



THE NATIONAL ANTHEM

Nkosi sikelel' i Afrika
 (God bless Africa)
 Maluphakanyisw' uphondo lwayo,
 (Raise high her glory)
 Yizwa imithandazo yethu,
 (Hear our prayers)
 Nkosi sikelela, thina lusapho lwayo.
 (God bless us, we her children)

Morena boloka setjhaba sa heso,
 (God protect our nation)
 O fedise dintwa le matshwenyeho,
 (End all wars and tribulations)
 O se boloke, O se boloke setjhaba sa heso,
 (Protect us, protect our nation)
 Setjhaba sa South Afrika – South Afrika.
 (Our nation South Africa – South Africa)

Uit die blou van onse hemel,
 (Ringing out from our blue heavens)
 Uit die diepte van ons see,
 (From the depth of our seas)
 Oor ons ewige gebergtes,
 (Over our everlasting mountains)
 Waar die kranse antwoord gee.
 (Where the echoing crags resound)

Sounds the call to come together,
 And united we shall stand,
 Let us live and strive for freedom,
 In South Africa our land.

Official Guide to South Africa 2022/23

Twentieth (20th) edition

Compiled, edited and published by:

Government Communications (GCIS)

Private Bag X745

Pretoria, 0001

Telephone: 012 473 0000

Website: www.gcis.gov.za

ISBN: 978-0-7961-0515-8

Editor: Mr Elias Tibane

Picture coordinator: Ms Busisiwe Malungwane

Images supplied by: GCIS Photography Unit

Design and layout: Ms Kamogelo Mbaxaza and Mr Trevor Baloyi

Compiled, edited and published by the GCIS.

The editor has taken all reasonable care to ensure correctness of facts and statistics. However, any person requiring confirmation of any data in the *Official Guide to South Africa* or more detailed and specific information, should contact the relevant government institution.

Unless otherwise specified, information contained in this *Official Guide to South Africa* was the latest available as at December 2023.

For all enquiries, please contact the Editor on 012 473 0069 or elias@gcis.gov.za.

CONTENTS

- Foreword by President Cyril Ramaphosa
- South Africa at a Glance
- History
- People of South Africa
- Government
- The Presidency
- Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development
- Communications
- Economy and Finance
- Education
- Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment
- Health
- Human Settlements
- International Relations
- Justice and Correctional Services
- Mineral Resources and Energy
- Police, Defence and Intelligence
- Provinces
- Science and Innovation
- Social Development
- Sport, Arts and Culture
- Tourism
- Transport
- Water and Sanitation



**SOUTH AFRICA
AT A GLANCE**

**OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
SOUTH AFRICA**

2022/23

Land surface area

1 220 813 km²

Key economic sectors

Mining, transport, energy, manufacturing, tourism and agriculture.

Population

Total: 62 million

Male: 30 076 814 million (48,5%)

Female: 31 947 531 (51,5%)

Population group

| Name | % |
|---------------|-------|
| Black African | 81,4% |
| Coloured | 8,2% |
| Indian/Asian | 2,7% |
| White | 7,3% |

Official languages

English, isiZulu, isiXhosa, isiNdebele, Afrikaans, Siswati, Sepedi, Sesotho, Setswana, Tshivenda and Xitsonga.

Currency

Rand (ZAR) – 100 cents equal one rand.

Time

GMT +2 hours.

Government

Constitutional multiparty democracy, with three spheres – local, provincial and national government.

Capitals

Pretoria (administrative); Cape Town (legislative); Bloemfontein (judicial). The Constitutional Court is located in Johannesburg.

Provinces

Eastern Cape, Free State, Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, Mpumalanga, Northern Cape, North West and Western Cape.

Transportation

Excellent roads, rail and air facilities (both domestic and international). Public transport in major cities include the Gautrain between Johannesburg and Pretoria, and the Bus Rapid Transport System in major cities.

Telecommunications

World-class telecommunications infrastructure. Internet and Wi-Fi access is widely available. The four major mobile (cellular) networks are Vodacom, MTN, Cell C and Telkom Mobile.

South Africa is widely recognised as having one of the most advanced digital ecosystems in the continent. Its key features include over 300 000 kilometres of fibre distributed across the country.

Health

Top-quality public and private healthcare is available throughout the country. Malaria precautions are necessary in some areas.

Source on population figures: Statistics South Africa's Census 2022. For more information, visit www.southafrica.info and www.gov.za.



HISTORY

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO **SOUTH AFRICA**

2022/23

History

Modern humans have lived at the southern tip of Africa for more than 100 000 years and their ancestors for some 3,3 million years. Some 2 000 years ago, the Khoekhoen (the Hottentots of early European terminology) were pastoralists who had settled mostly along the coast, while the San (the Bushmen) were hunter-gatherers spread across the region.

At this time, Bantu-speaking agropastoralists began arriving in southern Africa, spreading from the eastern lowlands to the Highveld. At several archaeological sites there is evidence of sophisticated political and material cultures.

European contact

The first European settlement in southern Africa was established by the Dutch East India Company in Table Bay (Cape Town) in 1652. Created to supply passing ships with fresh produce, the colony grew rapidly as Dutch farmers settled to grow crops. Shortly after the establishment of the colony, slaves were imported from East Africa, Madagascar and the East Indies.

The first British Settlers, known as the 1820 Settlers, arrived in Algoa Bay (now Nelson Mandela Bay) on board 21 ships, the first being the Chapman. They numbered about 4 500 and included artisans, tradesmen, religious leaders, merchants, teachers, bookbinders, blacksmiths, discharged sailors and soldiers, professional men and farmers.

Conflict

From the 1770s, colonists came into contact and inevitable conflict with Bantu-speaking chiefdoms some 800 km east of Cape Town. A century of intermittent warfare ensued during which the colonists gained ascendancy over the isiXhosa-speaking chiefdoms. In 1795, the British occupied the Cape as a strategic base against the French, controlling the sea route to the East.

In the 1820s, the celebrated Zulu leader, Shaka, established sway over a vast area of south-east Africa. As splinter Zulu groups conquered and absorbed communities in their path, the region experienced a fundamental disruption. Substantial states, such as Moshoeshoe's Lesotho and other Sotho-Tswana chiefdoms were established. This temporary disruption of life on the Highveld served to facilitate the expansion northwards of the original Dutch settlers' descendants, the Boer Voortrekkers, from the 1830s.

Occupation

In 1806, Britain reoccupied the Cape. As the colony prospered, the political rights of the various races were guaranteed, with slavery being abolished in 1838. Throughout the 1800s, the boundaries of European influence spread eastwards. From the port of Durban, Natal settlers pushed northwards, further and further into the land of the Zulu. From the mid-1800s, the Voortrekkers coalesced in two land-locked white-ruled republics, the South African Republic (Transvaal) and the Orange Free State.

The mineral revolution

South Africa's diamond mining industry dates back to 1867, when diamonds were discovered near Kimberley in what is today known as the Northern Cape. The Kimberley diamond fields, and later discoveries in Gauteng, the Free State, and along the Atlantic coast, emerged as major sources of gem-quality diamonds, securing South Africa's position as the world's leading producer in the mid-twentieth century.

Gold

The discovery of the Witwatersrand goldfields in 1886 was a turning point in South Africa's history. The demand for franchise rights for English-speaking immigrants working on the new goldfields was the pretext Britain used to go to war with the Transvaal and Orange Free State in 1899.

The Anglo-Boer/South African War was the bloodiest, longest and most expensive war Britain engaged in between 1815 and 1915. It cost more than 200 million pounds and Britain lost more than 22 000 men. The Boers lost over 34 000 people and more than 15 000 black South Africans were killed.

Union and opposition

In 1910, the Union of South Africa was created out of the Cape, Natal, Transvaal and Free State. It was to be essentially a white union. Black opposition was inevitable, and the African National Congress (ANC) was founded in 1912 to protest the exclusion of black people from power. In 1921, the South African Communist Party was established at a time of heightened militancy. More discriminatory legislation was enacted. Meanwhile, Afrikaner nationalism, fuelled by job losses arising from a worldwide recession, was on the march.

The rise of apartheid

In 1948, the pro-Afrikaner National Party (NP) came to power with the ideology of apartheid, an even more rigorous and authoritarian approach than the previous segregationist policies. While white South Africa was cementing its power, black opposition politics were evolving. In 1943, a younger, more determined political grouping came to the fore with the launch of the ANC Youth League, a development, which was to foster the leadership of people such as Nelson Rolihlahla Mandela, Oliver Tambo and Walter Sisulu.

From the port of Durban, Natal settlers pushed northwards, further and further into the land of the Zulu. From the mid-1800s, the Voortrekkers coalesced in two land-locked white-ruled republics, the South African Republic (Transvaal) and the Orange Free State.

The mineral revolution

South Africa's diamond mining industry dates back to 1867, when diamonds were discovered near Kimberley in what is today known as the Northern Cape. The Kimberley diamond fields, and later discoveries in Gauteng, the Free

State, and along the Atlantic coast, emerged as major sources of gem-quality diamonds, securing South Africa's position as the world's leading producer in the mid-twentieth century.

Gold

The discovery of the Witwatersrand goldfields in 1886 was a turning point in South Africa's history. The demand for franchise rights for English-speaking immigrants working on the new goldfields was the pretext Britain used to go to war with the Transvaal and Orange Free State in 1899.

The Anglo-Boer/South African War was the bloodiest, longest and most expensive war Britain engaged in between 1815 and 1915. It cost more than 200 million pounds and Britain lost more than 22 000 men. The Boers lost over 34 000 people and more than 15 000 black South Africans were killed.

Union and opposition

In 1910, the Union of South Africa was created out of the Cape, Natal, Transvaal and Free State. It was to be essentially a white union. Black opposition was inevitable, and the African National Congress (ANC) was founded in 1912 to protest the exclusion of black people from power.

In 1921, the South African Communist Party was established at a time of heightened militancy. More discriminatory legislation was enacted. Meanwhile, Afrikaner nationalism, fuelled by job losses arising from a worldwide recession, was on the march.

Reform

Shaken by the scale of protest and opposition, the government embarked on a series of limited reforms in the early 1980s. In 1983, the Constitution was reformed to allow the coloured and Indian minorities limited participation in separate and subordinate houses of Parliament. In 1986, the pass laws were scrapped.

The international community strengthened its support for the anti-apartheid cause. Mass resistance increasingly challenged the apartheid State, which resorted to intensified repression accompanied by eventual recognition that apartheid could not be sustained.

Apartheid's last days

Afrikaner elite openly started to pronounce in favour of a more inclusive society, with a number of businesspeople, students and academic leaders meeting publicly and privately with the ANC in exile.

Petty apartheid laws and symbols were openly challenged and eventually removed. Together with a sliding economy, increasing internal dissent and international pressure, these developments inevitably led to historic changes and the fall of apartheid.

Democratic government

South Africa held its first democratic election in April 1994 under an interim Constitution. The ANC emerged with a 62% majority. South Africa was divided into nine new provinces to replace the four existing provinces and 10 black homelands. In terms of the interim Constitution, the NP and Inkatha Freedom Party (IFP) participated in a government of national unity under President Mandela, South Africa's first democratically elected president.

The second democratic election, in 1999, saw the ANC increasing its majority to a point just short of two-thirds of the total vote. In the April 2004 election, the ANC won the national vote with 69,68% and the celebration of 10 Years of Freedom attended by heads of state and government delegations from across the world.

In 2008, Mr Kgalema Motlanthe became President following the recalling of President Thabo Mbeki. On 22 April 2009, South Africa held national and provincial elections with about 76% of registered voters casting their votes. Mr Jacob Zuma was inaugurated as President of South Africa on 9 May 2009. The following year, a significant milestone for South Africa was the hosting of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

Municipal elections were held on 18 May 2011, electing new councils for all municipalities in the country. October 2011 saw Statistics South Africa conducting a comprehensive national census. The census, which analysed the country's demographics, population distribution and access to services, average household size, income, migration, and mortality, was the third national population and housing count in post-apartheid South Africa. The exercise saw 156 000 field staff employed to count more than 14,6 million households.

South Africa has continued to build on its international profile. On 1 January 2011, the country started its second term as a non-permanent member of the United Nations (UN) Security Council between 2011 and 2012, serving alongside the five permanent members, China, France, the Russian Federation, the United Kingdom and the United States of America, as well as elected members Bosnia and Herzegovina, Brazil, Colombia, Gabon, Germany, India, Lebanon, Nigeria and Portugal.

In 2011, as part of government's commitment to secure a better quality of life for all, the National Planning Commission in The Presidency finalised the draft National Development Plan (NDP): Vision for 2030. The plan is a step towards charting a new path for South Africa in dealing with the triple challenge of poverty, unemployment and inequality. On 8 January 2012, Africa's oldest liberation movement, the ANC, celebrated 100 years of existence. This was a historic achievement, not only for the movement, but also for South Africa and the continent.

In May 2012, the Square Array Kilometre (SKA) Organisation announced that the SKA Project would be shared between South Africa and Australia, with a majority share coming to South Africa. The full dish array and the dense aperture array will

be built in Africa. In November 2012, South Africa was elected by the members of the UN General Assembly to the UN's 47 member Economic and Social Council. In December 2012, President Zuma was re-elected as the president of the ANC during the ruling party's congress in Mangaung, Free State with Cyril Ramaphosa elected as the party's deputy president.

In July 2013, Ms Phumzile Mlambo-Ngcuka was appointed executive director of the UN Women Entity for Gender Equality and Empowerment of Women, and Ms Geraldine Fraser-Moleketi, was appointed director in the UN Development Programme's Bureau for Development Policy.

On 5 December 2013, South Africa's first democratically elected President and antiapartheid icon Mandela died at the age of 95. Mr Mandela led South Africa's transition from white-minority rule in the 1990s, after 27 years in prison for his political activities. He had been receiving intensive medical care at home for a lung infection after spending three months in hospital. His body lay in state at the Union Buildings from 11 to 13 December. He was buried in his home town of Qunu in the Eastern Cape on 15 December 2013. South Africa celebrated 20 Years of Freedom in 2014, which was a historic milestone for the country.

The *Twenty Year Review*, which was released in 2013, and the National Planning Commission's 2011 Diagnostic Report, highlight that poverty, inequality and unemployment continue to negatively affect the lives of many people. Despite progress in reducing rural poverty and increasing access to basic services in rural areas over the past 20 years, rural areas are still characterised by great poverty and inequality. As stated in the NDP, by 2030, South Africa's rural communities must have better opportunities to participate fully in the economic, social and political life of the country.

Government's programme of radical economic transformation is about placing the economy on a qualitatively different path that ensures more rapid, sustainable growth, higher investment, increased employment, reduced inequality and deracialisation of the economy. The NDP sets a growth target of at least 5% a year, and emphasises measures to ensure that the benefits of growth are equitably shared.

South Africa's fifth general elections were held on 7 May 2014. It was also the first time that South African expatriates were allowed to vote in a South African national election. The ANC won the National Assembly election (62,1%) and the official opposition Democratic Alliance (DA) won 22,2% of the votes, while the newly formed Economic Freedom Fighters (EFF) obtained 6,4% of the vote.

The ANC also won eight of the nine provincial legislatures. The EFF obtained over 10% of the votes in Gauteng, Limpopo and North West, and beat the DA to second place in Limpopo and North West. In the other six provinces won by the ANC, the DA obtained second place. In the Western Cape, the only province not won by the ANC, the DA increased its majority from 51,5% to 59,4%. In 2015, South Africa celebrated the 60th Anniversary of the Freedom Charter, which called for peace and friendship among nations.

The 40th Anniversary of the 16 June 1976 Soweto Student Uprising was

celebrated in 2016, along with the 20th Anniversary of the signing of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996. The 2016 municipal elections were held on 3 August 2016. The ANC won 53,9% of the total vote, followed by the official opposition DA with 26,9% and the EFF with 8,2%. In 2017, South Africa celebrated five years since the launch of the NDP, which outlines the goals to achieve the vision of a prosperous South Africa by tackling the triple challenge of unemployment, poverty and inequality by 2030.

South Africa celebrated the Centenary of the late Oliver Reginald Tambo in 2017, under the theme: “Life and Legacy of OR Tambo”. He was one of the key drivers of South Africa’s liberation and one of the founding fathers of the country’s constitutional democracy. At its 54th National Conference held at Nasrec in Soweto on 18 December 2017, the ANC elected Mr Ramaphosa as its president.

Following the resignation of President Zuma in February 2018, Mr Ramaphosa was elected unopposed as the fifth President of democratic South Africa by the National Assembly on 15 February 2018. In 2018, South Africa celebrated the centenary of two Struggle stalwarts, Tata Mandela and Mama Albertina Nontsikelelo Sisulu. In 2019, South Africa celebrated 25 Years of Freedom. In May 2019, the country also held its sixth national and provincial elections. The ANC won 57,50% of the total vote, followed by the official opposition DA with 20,77% and the EFF with 10.79%.

On 25 May 2019, Mr Ramaphosa was inaugurated as the sixth democratically elected President of South Africa. In a departure from the tradition of holding the inauguration at the Union Buildings, the event took place at Loftus Versfeld Stadium in Pretoria. On 31 December 2019, the World Health Organization reported a cluster of pneumonia cases in Wuhan City, China.

‘Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome Coronavirus 2’ (SARSCoV-2) was confirmed as the causative agent of what we now know as ‘Coronavirus Disease 2019’ (COVID-19). Since then, the virus has spread to more than 100 countries, including South Africa.

On 15 March 2020, President Ramaphosa declared a National State of Disaster, and announced measures such as immediate travel restrictions and the closure of schools from 18 March. The declaration of the National State of Disaster empowered government to take the measures that prevented many more people from becoming severely ill and saved countless lives.

It also provided the legal basis for the introduction of the special R350 Social Relief of Distress Grant and the establishment of the COVID Temporary Employee/Employer Relief Scheme, which provided wage support to millions of workers.

On 17 March, the National Coronavirus Command Council was established to lead the nation’s plan to contain the spread and mitigate the negative impact of COVID-19. On 23 March, a 21-day national lockdown was announced, starting on 27 March 2020.

President Ramaphosa announced that from 1 May 2020, a gradual and phased easing of the lockdown restrictions would begin. From 1 June, the national

restrictions were lowered to Alert Level 3. The restrictions were lowered to alert Level 2 on 17 August 2020 and from 21 September 2020 restrictions were lowered to Alert Level 1.

Government declared 2021 The Year of Charlotte Mannya-Maxeke under the theme: “The Year of Charlotte Mannya-Maxeke: Realising Women’s Equality”. She was a pioneer, activist, artist, intellectual, internationalist and visionary. On 1 November 2021, the country held its sixth Local Government Elections. The ANC won the majority seats in 161 municipal councils, followed by the DA in 13 municipalities and the IFP in 10 municipalities.

A total of 66 municipal councils were hung – meaning that no party gained an outright majority in those councils. From the 9th to the 18th of July 2021, South Africa experienced civil unrest mainly in some parts of KwaZulu-Natal and Gauteng, which left in its wake over 354 people dead. The Judicial Commission of Inquiry into Allegations of State Capture, Corruption and Fraud in the Public Sector, led by then Deputy Chief Justice Raymond Zondo (now Chief Justice), handed all its reports to The Presidency in 2022.

On 2 January 2022, a major fire broke out at the parliamentary complex housing the Parliament of South Africa in Cape Town. A suspect, Mr Zandile Made, was arrested and charged with arson.

In April 2022, government lifted the National State of Disaster but retained “transitional measures” for the following thirty days, which included the wearing of masks, limitations on gatherings and international travel. In June 2022, the Ministry of Health repealed the transitional COVID-19 measures, including the wearing of masks, limitations on gatherings and international travel.

In July 2022, Justice Mandisa Maya – the first woman to lead the Supreme Court of Appeal as Deputy President and President respectively – became the first woman to be appointed Deputy Chief Justice of the Constitutional Court of South Africa. President Ramaphosa appointed Maya in terms of Section 174(3) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996.

On 20 August 2022, King Misuzulu ka Zwelithini was crowned as the new Zulu King at a ceremony held at the Moses Mabhida Stadium in Durban. This was the first Zulu coronation since South Africa became a democracy in 1994. It followed the death of his father, King Goodwill Zwelithini, on 12 March 2021, aged 72.

In November 2022, the Constitutional Court ordered the release of a Polish national, Mr Janusz Walus, on parole. In April 1993, Mr Walus assassinated Mr Chris Hani, the then General Secretary of the South African Communist Party and chief of staff of Umkhonto we Sizwe (MK), the armed wing of the ANC.

On 7 March 2023, Mr Paul Mashatile was sworn in as South Africa’s new Deputy President, following the resignation of former Deputy President David Mabuza, the latter who was first sworn in as Deputy President of the Republic of South Africa on 27 February 2018 and again on 30 May 2019 for the 6th democratic Administration. Mr Mashatile was elected as the Deputy President of the ANC in December 2022 during the ANC’s 55th national conference held at the Johannesburg Expo Centre in Nasrec.



PEOPLE OF
SOUTH AFRICA

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
SOUTH AFRICA

2022/23

People of South Africa

Statistics South Africa's Census 2022 showed that the population of South Africa increased from 51,7 million in 2011 to more than 62 million in 2022; a growth rate of 1,8% in the intercensal period. Females constituted 51,5% of the total population, while 48,5% were males. Gauteng and KwaZulu-Natal had the highest populations at 15 million and 12,4 million respectively, while the Northern Cape had the smallest (1,3 million).

Black Africans remain the dominant population group at 81,4%, followed by the coloured population at 8,2%. The white population percentage declined to 7,3% in 2022 from 8,9% observed in 2011, while that for Indians/Asians increased slightly from 2,5% in 2011 to 2,7% in 2022. The median age increased to 28 years from 25 years in 2011, suggesting a consistent increase over time and an overall increase of three years.

More than 55 000 homeless individuals were recorded, with more males (70,1%) than females (29,9%), for both roofless and sheltered. Homelessness was more prevalent in metropolitan areas (74,1%) compared to non-metropolitan areas (25,9%). City of Tshwane recorded the highest proportion of homeless persons (18,1%), followed by City of Johannesburg at 15,6%. Looking at the top five reasons for homelessness, job loss/no income was the most cited for both males and females (41,3%), followed by alcohol and drug abuse (25%).

Internal migration results showed that two provinces still dominate internal migration in South Africa. Gauteng remained the dominant migration stream, receiving more than a third of all internal migrants, followed by Western Cape with 15%. Over the intercensal period, four provinces experienced an outflow of people, namely Limpopo, Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and Free State.

Census 2022 showed there were more than 2,4 million international migrants, which equates to just above 3% of the total population. Most of these came from the Southern African Development Community region (86%) and of these, 45,5% came from Zimbabwe, followed by Mozambique with 18,7% and Lesotho with 10,2%. The top five sending countries to South Africa were Zimbabwe, Mozambique, Malawi, Lesotho and the United Kingdom; these five countries have also maintained their rank since 2011.

More than three million children (0–4 years) participated in Early Childhood Development (ECD). Provincially, children in Northern Cape (57%) and North West (52,4%) were more likely not to participate in ECD, compared to other provinces.

Registration of births

In South Africa, the right to identity – which includes nationality, name and family relations – is enshrined in Section 28 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996. The Births and Deaths Registration Act of 1992 governs the registration of births in South Africa.

The last amendment on the Births and Deaths Registration Act of 1992 was made in 2010. The registration of births in South Africa falls under the mandate of the Department of Home Affairs. To better enforce the registration of births, the

Amendment Act of 2010 mandates the registrations of births within 30 days from date of birth. The Constitution and the Act reaffirm South Africa's commitment to Articles seven and eight of the United Nations Convention on the Rights of the Child and the African Charter on the rights and welfare of the child.

The agreements mandate the preservation of children's rights to identity, a nationality, to a name from birth, family ties and birth registration immediately after birth. The realisation of the right to be registered is closely linked to the safeguarding of a whole range of fundamental rights, including healthcare, social security, education, participation and protection.

The primary purpose of the records derived from the civil-registration process is to create a permanent record of the birth occurrence and for the issuing of a birth certificate, which is a personal document to attest birth registration and the most visible evidence of the government's legal recognition of the child. In essence, without a birth certificate the unregistered babies/children essentially do not legally exist.

Languages

South Africa is a multicultural society that is characterised by its rich linguistic diversity. Language is an indispensable tool that can be used to deepen democracy and also contribute to the social, cultural, intellectual, economic and political life of the South African society.

The country is multilingual with 11 official languages, each of which is guaranteed equal status. Most South Africans are multilingual and able to speak at least two or more of the official languages.

In terms of the Use of Official Languages Act of 2012, and as part of promoting social cohesion and nation-building, every government department, public entity and enterprise is expected to establish a language unit and adopt a language policy.

On 2 May 2023, the National Assembly approved that Section 6 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 be amended to include the South African Sign Language (SASL) as the 12th official language to promote the rights of persons who are deaf and hard of hearing.

On 19 July 2023, President Cyril Ramaphosa signed into law the SASL Bill during a ceremony at the Union Buildings in Pretoria.

The SASL is an indigenous language that constitutes an important element of South African linguistic and cultural heritage. It has its own distinct grammatical structures and lexicon and it is independent of any other language. The new legislation seeks to:

- advance the cultural acceptance of SASL;
- ensure the realisation of the rights of persons who are deaf and hard of hearing to equal protection and benefit of the law and human dignity; and
- promote inclusive and substantive equality and prevent or eliminate unfair discrimination on the grounds of disability, as guaranteed by Section 9 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa on 1996.

South Africa became the fourth African country after Kenya, Zimbabwe and Uganda to recognise sign language as an official language.

Religious beliefs

Religious beliefs in South Africa include Christianity; Islam; Traditional African religion; Hinduism; Buddhism; Bahaism; Judaism; Atheism, Agnosticism and Satanism.



GOVERNMENT

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
SOUTH AFRICA

2022/23

Government

South Africa is a constitutional democracy with a three-tier system of government and an independent judiciary. The national, provincial and local levels of government all have legislative and executive authority in their own spheres, and are defined in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 as distinctive, interdependent and interrelated.

Operating at both national and provincial levels are advisory bodies drawn from South Africa's traditional leaders. It is a stated intention in the Constitution that the country be run on a system of cooperative governance. Government is committed to building a free, non-racial, non-sexist, democratic, united and successful South Africa.

The Constitution

The Constitution is the supreme law of the land. No other law or government action can supersede the provisions of the Constitution. It was approved by the Constitutional Court on 4 December 1996 and took effect on 4 February 1997.

Government

Government consists of national, provincial and local spheres. The powers of the legislature, executive and courts are separate.

Parliament

Parliament consists of the National Assembly and the National Council of Provinces (NCOP). Parliamentary sittings are open to the public. Several measures have been implemented to make Parliament more accessible and accountable.

National Assembly

The National Assembly consists of no fewer than 350 and no more than 400 members, elected through a system of proportional representation for a five-year term. It elects the President and scrutinises the executive.

National Council of Provinces

The NCOP is constitutionally mandated to ensure that provincial interests are taken into account in the national sphere of government. This is done through participation in the national legislative process and by providing a national forum for consideration of issues affecting provinces. The NCOP consists of 90 provincial delegates, which is 10 delegates for each of the nine provinces.

Government clusters

Government clusters are groupings of government departments with cross-cutting programmes. Clusters foster an integrated approach to governance that is aimed at improving government planning, decision making and service delivery.

The objective is to ensure proper coordination of all government programmes at national and provincial levels. The main functions of the clusters are to

ensure the alignment of government-wide priorities, facilitate and monitor the implementation of priority programmes and to provide a consultative platform on cross-cutting priorities and matters being taken to Cabinet.

The clusters of the Forum of South African Directors-General (FOSAD) mirror the Ministerial clusters. The FOSAD clusters provide technical support to the Ministerial Clusters. The Director-General in The Presidency is the chairperson of FOSAD. The clusters are as follows:

- Economic Sectors, Investment, Employment and Infrastructure Development
- Social Protection, Community and Human Development
- Governance, State Capacity and Institutional Development
- Justice, Crime Prevention and Security
- International Cooperation, Trade and Security.

Izimbizo

The Izimbizo programme is a communication platform that enables the citizenry to have a meaningful and direct engagement with members of the national, provincial and local executive. It promotes unmediated face-to-face communication with the public.

It provides an opportunity to political principals to share government plans to improve service delivery and to listen to issues facing communities.

Inter-Ministerial Committees (IMCs)

The President of the Republic of South Africa (and in certain instances the Cabinet) appoints IMCs for specific purposes that require the attention and dedication of a team of certain Ministers.

The mandate of the IMCs is limited to the matter that they are established to execute. Some of the past and present IMCs include the following:

- IMC on the Prevention and Combating of Corruption
- IMC on Information and Publicity
- IMC on State Funerals
- IMC on the Revitalisation of Distressed Mining communities
- IMC on Immigration Regulations.
- IMC on Investment Promotion
- MC on Local Government Elections
- IMC on the Centenaries of Mama Albertina Sisulu and Tata Nelson
- IMC on the South Africa Investment Conference
- IMC on Land Reform
- IMC on Illegal Mining
- IMC on Climate Change
- IMC on Comprehensive Social Security
- IMC on the Employment of Foreign Nationals
- IMC on Electricity Reticulation
- IMC on Energy
- IMC on the South African National AIDS Council

- IMC on District-Level Service Delivery
- IMC on Gender-Based Violence and Femicide
- IMC on Vaccines
- IMC on Political Killings.

The Presidency

The Presidency is the executive manager of government. It is situated in the Union Buildings, Pretoria, and has a subsidiary office in Tuynhuys, Cape Town. The NDP offers a long-term socio-economic development road map. The NDP: Vision for 2030 focuses on the following strategic areas of development:

- Creating jobs;
- Expanding infrastructure;
- Sustainable use of resources;
- Transforming urban and rural spaces;
- Improving education and training;
- Providing quality healthcare;
- Building a capable state;
- Fighting crime and corruption; and
- Uniting the nation.

The Deputy President

The President appoints the Deputy President from among the members of the National Assembly.

The Presidency

- President Cyril Matamela Ramaphosa.
- Deputy President Paul Mashatile.

Cabinet

Cabinet consists of the President, as head of the Cabinet, the Deputy President and Ministers. The President appoints the Deputy President and Ministers, assigns their powers and functions and may dismiss them. No more than two Ministers may be appointed from outside the National Assembly.

Provincial government

Each of the nine provinces has its own legislature of 30 to 80 members. They elect the premiers who head the executive councils.

Traditional leadership

The reconstitution of the National House of Traditional and Khoi-San Leaders (NHTKL), conducted in terms of the Traditional and Khoi-San Leadership Act of 2019, followed the reconstitution of all the Provincial Houses of Traditional and Khoi-San Leaders.

The national and provincial houses of traditional and Khoi-San leaders enhance

the cooperative relationships within national and provincial government, while the establishment of local houses of traditional leaders deepens and cements the relationship between municipalities and traditional leaders on customary law and development initiatives.

Local government

Local government is the sphere of government closest to the people. In accordance with the Constitution and the Organised Local Government Act of 1997, which formally recognises organised local-government associations, organised local government may designate up to 10 part-time representatives to represent municipalities and participate in proceedings of the NCOP.

Municipalities

There are 257 municipalities in South Africa comprising eight metropolitan, 44 district and 205 local municipalities. Municipalities govern on a four-year term basis and run local affairs subject to national and provincial legislation. They focus on growing local economies and providing infrastructure and services.

The eight metropolitan municipalities are:

- Buffalo City (East London)
- City of Cape Town
- Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality (East Rand)
- City of eThekwinini (Durban)
- City of Johannesburg
- Mangaung Municipality (Bloemfontein)
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Municipality (Port Elizabeth)
- City of Tshwane (Pretoria).

DEPARTMENT OF COOPERATIVE GOVERNANCE (DCOG)

The DCoG is mandated to develop and monitor the implementation of national policy and legislation to enable government to fulfil its developmental role; develop, promote and monitor mechanisms, systems and structures to enable integrated service delivery and implementation within government; and promote sustainable development by providing support and exercising oversight of provincial, local government and its entities. This mandate is derived from the:

- Municipal Structure Act of 1998;
- Municipal Systems Act of 2000;
- Disaster Management Act of 2002;
- Municipal Property Rates Act of 2004; and
- Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act of 2005.

Over the medium term, the DCoG planned to continue focusing on increasing access to basic services, mitigating against the risk of disasters, and creating income security in areas of high unemployment.

Increasing access to basic services

The local government equitable share is an unconditional transfer that supplements the revenue raised by municipalities to perform their functions. It funds the operations and maintenance of free basic services, and subsidises the cost of administration for municipalities with the least potential to cover these costs from their own revenue.

Mitigating against the risk of disasters

Over the medium term, the department plans to continue to mitigate against the risk of disasters and build resilience by supporting 30 priority district municipalities that are considered most vulnerable to implement disaster management plans.

Creating income security in areas of high unemployment

To support government's employment initiatives, over the period ahead, the department aims to maintain 250 000 participants in the Community Work Programme, especially in areas of high unemployment.

DEPARTMENT OF TRADITIONAL AFFAIRS (DTA)

The DTA is mandated to oversee matters related to traditional affairs and support the development of stable and cohesive traditional communities. The *2003 White Paper on Traditional Leadership and Governance* sets out the national framework, norms and standards that define the role of institutions of traditional leadership in South Africa.

It seeks to support and transform the institutions in accordance with constitutional imperatives and restore the integrity and legitimacy of traditional leadership in line with African indigenous law and customs subject to the Constitution.

The department's mandate is informed by the:

- Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Culture, Religious and Linguistic Communities Act of 2002;
- Traditional and Khoi-San Leadership Act of 2019; and
- Customary Initiation Act of 2021.

Over the medium term, the DTA planned to continue focusing on monitoring the implementation of the Traditional and Khoi-San Leadership Act of 2019 and ensuring that customary initiation is practised safely, as guided by the Customary Initiation Act of 2021.

This entailed monitoring the development of principal and senior traditional leadership in royal families' customary laws of succession and genealogies in eight provinces per year over the period ahead to mitigate against disputes and claims, in line with the provisions of the Traditional and Khoi-San Leadership Act of 2019.

By 2025/26, the Commission on Khoi-San Matters aimed to research and investigate all applications it receives for the recognition of Khoi-San communities and leaders, and to make recommendations to the Minister of Cooperative

Governance and Traditional Affairs on the recognition of Khoi-San communities and leaders.

To create a safe and regulated environment for initiates in all provinces, the department planned to monitor and ensure compliance in implementing the Customary Initiation Act of 2021 over the medium-term period.

DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC SERVICE AND ADMINISTRATION (DPSA)

The DPSA draws its mandate from Section 195(1) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, which sets out basic values and principles the Public Service should adhere to, and the Public Service Act of 1994.

In terms of the Act, the Minister of Public Service and Administration is responsible for establishing norms and standards relating to:

- the functions of the Public Service;
- the establishment and organisational structures of departments and other organisational and governance;
- arrangements in the Public Service;
- labour relations, conditions of service and other employment practices for employees in the Public Service;
- the health and wellness of employees in the Public Service;
- information management and electronic government in the Public Service;
- integrity, ethics, conduct and anti-corruption in the Public Service; and
- transformation, reform, innovation and any other matters to improve the effectiveness and efficiency of the Public Service and its delivery of services to the public.

The department provides an enabling environment to ensure government departments that deliver services have adequate capacity to carry out their mandates. In seeking to do this, over the medium term, the DPSA aimed to focus on intensifying the fight against corruption in the Public Service, reducing government's wage bill, ensuring adherence to Batho Pele principles, and developing regulations and reviewing key legislation.

Intensifying the fight against corruption

The department planned to continue intensifying the fight against corruption in the Public Service over the medium-term period by strengthening disciplinary action in such cases, and promoting a culture of accountability and ethical and professional behaviour.

Part of combating corruption entailed limiting the scope for conflicts of interest through measures such as prohibiting public servants from conducting business with the state. This entailed conducting lifestyle audits on certain categories of employees and monitoring the implementation of the financial disclosure framework.

The department planned to support 12 departments over the medium term on the implementation of the guidelines while increasing awareness of public-sector lifestyle audits, especially in terms of the repercussions of committing

fraudulent activities; and providing support to all government departments on the implementation of the guidelines.

Reducing government's wage bill

The DPSA is tasked with ensuring that the public-sector wage bill becomes more affordable. As such, in collaboration with National Treasury and other departments, the department planned to review remuneration policies across government with the aim of developing a single remuneration framework for the public sector (excluding state-owned enterprises).

This was expected to be achieved over the medium term, and would be in line with the principles of fair, equitable and sustainable remuneration. The implementation of the framework was also expected to reduce remuneration inequality for employees performing similar tasks in different spheres of government.

Improving the implementation of Batho Pele principles

Adherence to Batho Pele principles means putting people first in the delivery of public services. Accordingly, over the medium term, the department planned to continue providing the necessary support to departments by monitoring the quality and implementation of the revised Batho Pele programme, and the extent to which departments promote and implement the principles. Each department is required to develop standards to guide its implementation of the principles.

Developing regulations and reviewing key legislation

Over the period ahead, the DPSA planned to focus on developing regulations to enable the full implementation of the Public Administration Management Act of 2014. Following consultations with internal and external stakeholders on the draft *White Paper on the Transformation and Modernisation of Public Administration Regulations* for the Act were submitted to relevant stakeholders.

The amended Act was expected to inform the formulation of further regulations and other legislative provisions to enhance the principles of a unified public administration. The department also planned to review the Public Service Act of 1994 and related policies over the period ahead.

PUBLIC SERVICE COMMISSION (PSC)

The PSC is an independent institution established in terms of Chapter 10 of the Constitution and derives its mandate from sections 195 and 196 of the Constitution, which set out the values and principles governing public administration.

The PSC is vested with custodial oversight responsibilities for the Public Service, and monitors, evaluates and investigates public administration practices.

It has the power to issue directives on compliance with personnel procedures relating to recruitment, transfers, promotions and dismissals.

NATIONAL SCHOOL OF GOVERNMENT (NSG)

The NSG is mandated to provide training or effect its provision in terms of the Public Service Amendment Act of 2007. The school carries out its mandate by developing relevant training and development programmes for delivery to South African Public Service officials at all levels.

Through education and training, the school promotes the progressive realisation of the values and principles governing public administration, and enhances the quality of human resource capacity in public service institutions.

The NSG uses its trading account, which was established in terms of the Public Finance Management Act of 1999, as a delivery vehicle for its core output.

The number of online education, training and development interventions provided over the medium term was expected to increase from eight in 2022/23 to 10 in 2025/26. To achieve this, the NSG planned to continue implementing six ICT projects per year in fields such as learning and training management systems to enable the school to operate more efficiently in its operations.

These projects aimed to assist the school in increasing the number of learners accessing compulsory and demand-led training, and education and development programmes. The NSG planned to continue working on revising its entity's funding model by looking at alternative and broader sources of revenue beyond the fiscus to ensure financial sustainability. This will entail, among other interventions, a drive to increase the uptake of the school's education, training and development offerings.

CENTRE FOR PUBLIC SERVICE INNOVATION (CPSI)

In terms of Section 3(1)(i) of the Public Service Act of 1994, the responsibility for innovation in the public sector is vested in the Minister for Public Service and Administration.

The CPSI is tasked by the Minister to fulfil this mandate, which includes establishing norms and standards relating to transformation, reform and innovation to improve the effectiveness and efficiency of the Public Service and its delivery of services to the public.

Over the medium term, the CPSI aimed to use innovation to identify and offer solutions to service delivery challenges. It planned to do so by partnering with other government departments, non-governmental organisations, the private sector, tertiary institutions, academics and international entities to enhance government's implementation of the District Development Model (DDM).

The process of developing innovative solutions involves investigating challenges and then finding or creating a prototype, approach, model, service or product for further testing, piloting and/or replication.

Accordingly, in 2023/24, the CPSI planned to initiate four new research and development projects, such as the development of apps for emergency medical services. These are expected to enhance the delivery of services such as forensics and transport.

DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS AND INFRASTRUCTURE (DPWI)

As set out in the Government Immovable Asset Management Act of 2007, the DPWI is mandated to be the custodian and portfolio manager of government's immovable assets.

Since the establishment of the Property Management Trading Entity in 2015/16, the department's role includes policy formulation, coordination, regulation and oversight relating to the provision of accommodation and expert built environment services to client departments at the national level; and, through the entity, the planning, acquisition, management and disposal of immovable assets in the department's custody.

The department is also mandated to coordinate and provide strategic leadership in initiatives for the creation of jobs through the implementation of the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP). The DPWI is constitutionally designated as a concurrent function exercised by the national and provincial levels of government.

Over the medium term, the department planned to continue focusing on creating work opportunities by leading and coordinating the expanded public works programme; providing policy and sector oversight; building state capacity to facilitate skills development and strengthen the skills pipeline; and providing direct support to sponsors of priority public infrastructure projects.

Coordinating the EPWP

The department planned to continue its efforts to coordinate the EPWP, which aims to create work opportunities using labour-intensive methods across the three spheres of government.

Providing policy and legislative oversight

The DPWI plays an oversight role in the implementation of key legislation and policy frameworks in the public works sector. These include the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act of 2005 and the DDM, which guide the implementation of the public works function at the provincial and municipal levels.

The department gives effect to these frameworks by supporting joint programmes across all three spheres of government through its provision of coordination and intervention services, which are aimed at improving the coherence and impact of government's service delivery across the country.

The DPWI's work in this regard involves regular meetings with sector governance structures such as the Committee of the Public Works and Infrastructure Minister and members of the Executive Council.

Building state capacity to strengthen the skills pipeline

Building state capacity in the property management and built environment sectors is central to the department's work. This entails either restoring or replacing the skills pipeline, through which a variety of skills required within the built environment sector emerge.

The department aimed to increase the number of beneficiaries participating in

skills pipeline intervention programmes such as the Economic Reconstruction and Recovery Plan.

Providing support to public infrastructure projects

The department's Infrastructure South Africa division has identified the need to provide direct support through the allocation of project preparation resources to sponsors of priority public infrastructure projects, with the aim of expediting investor-friendly projects.

The DPWI will support sponsors with business planning packaging, prefeasibility and feasibility studies, technical designs, and legal and regulatory approvals in alignment with the Infrastructure Development Act of 2014, as amended.

DEPARTMENT OF HOME AFFAIRS (DHA)

The DHA derives its mandate from the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 and various Acts of Parliament and policy documents. This mandate entails the management of citizenship and civil registration, the management of international migration and the management of refugee protection. It allows the department to be a key enabler of national security, citizen empowerment, efficient administration and socio-economic development.

These functions must be managed securely and strategically. The department's services are divided into two broad categories: civic services and immigration services.

Over the medium term, the department planned to continue focusing on securing international migration through the establishment of the Border Management Authority (BMA), modernising ICT infrastructure to ensure integrated planning and efficient administration, ensuring access to rights and services, and digitising records.

Securing international movement

The BMA was expected to facilitate and manage the legitimate movement of people and goods within the border law enforcement area and at ports of entry, and cooperate with and coordinate its border law enforcement functions with other organs of state.

Transitional arrangements included transferring the frontline immigration function and personnel at ports of entry to the authority, seconding personnel to the authority from other organs of state, and conducting physical verification and asset inventories.

The entity had signed a memorandum of understanding with the department to share corporate services.

Modernising ICT infrastructure

The DHA is committed to screening all passengers and crew travelling to, from or through South Africa by air or sea, in advance. For this purpose, the passenger name record is expected to be rolled out over the medium-term period to enable

improved risk assessment by including data from airline reservation systems, such as payment details, travel itineraries and baggage information.

Preparatory work has begun to implement the system. This includes the purchasing of hardware, software design, system and hosting maintenance, and the appointment of service providers.

Other ICT modernisation projects across the department over the medium term include rolling out biometric movement control systems at identified ports of entry; developing a live-capture system for births, marriages and deaths; managing asylum seekers; and developing and rolling out the e-visa system.

Ensuring access to rights and services

The DHA's planned hybrid access model is expected to provide for the optimal number and location of physical offices (321) and mobile units (127) to reach 778 visiting points over the medium-term period.

In 2023/24, the department planned to procure 100 mobile units to be equipped with the necessary hardware, systems and connectivity to function as physical offices.

Over the medium term, the department planned to introduce self-service machines that will allow clients to directly apply for smart ID cards and passports, and for re-issuing birth, marriage and death certificates.

These machines will be installed in offices to increase the number of clients that can be served, as well as in strategic locations such as shopping centres. The department is running a pilot programme at Menlyn Mall in Pretoria.

Digitising records

Through its digitisation of records project, the department intends to convert more than 340 million paper-based South African civic records into an electronically searchable format by 2025/26. In doing so, it also plans to contribute to public and social employment by recruiting unemployed young graduates to work on the project.

GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS (GPW)

Government Printing Works is mandated to provide secure printing and ancillary services to all organs of state in all spheres of government. The entity operates on sound business principles and fulfils its mandate subject to policies as prescribed by the Minister of Home Affairs.

It produces enabling documents such as smart identity cards and passports, and facilitates communication by various government institutions through coordinating and distributing the *Government Gazette*.

Over the medium term, the entity planned to focus on revamping its ICT infrastructure by procuring a new enterprise resource planning system at a projected cost of R324 million. It will also focus on completing its master plan to renovate the administration building on Visagie Street, Pretoria, at an estimated cost of R1 billion over the period ahead.

DEPARTMENT OF EMPLOYMENT AND LABOUR (DEL)

The DEL derives its mandate from the Constitution. This mandate is given effect through several acts that regulate labour matters in South Africa: the Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993, the Labour Relations Act of 1995, the Basic Conditions of Employment Act of 1997, the Employment Equity Act of 1998 and the Employment Services Act of 2014.

The mandate of the department is to regulate the labour market through policies and programmes developed in consultation with social partners. These aim to:

- improve economic efficiency and productivity;
- facilitate the creation of decent employment;
- promote labour standards and fundamental rights at work;
- provide adequate social safety nets to protect vulnerable workers;
- promote and enforce sound labour relations;
- promote equity in the workplace;
- eliminate inequality and unfair discrimination in the workplace;
- enhance an awareness of and compliance with occupational health and safety in the workplace; and
- give value to social dialogue in the formulation of sound and responsive legislation and policies to attain labour market flexibility for the competitiveness of enterprises, balanced with the promotion of decent employment.

In working towards the vision of eliminating poverty and reducing inequality over the medium term, the DEL planned to focus on increasing safety and fairness in the workplace, providing support to work seekers, regulating the workplace, and engaging in multinational platforms, such as the Brazil-Russia-India-China-South Africa group of countries, to shape the future of work and protect workers' rights.

Increasing safety and fairness in the workplace

Through its advocacy programmes, which include 12 seminars and six conferences over the medium term, the department planned to increase its national footprint by ensuring compliance with employment law. This was expected to improve fairness in the workplace, especially for young people, people with disabilities and women, and transition workers from the informal to the formal economy.

Providing support to work seekers

Facilitating access to decent employment is central to the DEL's work. Over the medium term, it planned to register 2.9 million work seekers, provide counselling to 780 000 work seekers and place 195 000 work seekers in registered employment opportunities. In 2022/23, the department drafted the South African National Employment Policy in partnership with the International Labour Organisation. The purpose of the policy is to determine a sustainable approach to employment growth. In line with the policy, the department plans to establish an employment war room over the medium term.

The purpose of this intervention is to bring together government departments, business experts, and labour and community organisations. The department also

planned to focus on implementing an accessible framework for active labour market policies that supports work seekers by, among other things, digitising applications for vacancies and providing employment counselling through the Employment Services of South Africa system.

This is expected to be done in collaboration with private employment agencies with the aim of facilitating viable pathways to employment. The Employment Services of South Africa online app has been developed. Limited data and internet access are still hindrances to work seekers.

In addition, all youth employment centres that were built in 2022/23 will have free Wi-Fi. Internet connectivity will also enable work seekers to access other tools that assist youth to better understand their career aspirations and build capacity.

In 2022/23, the department drafted the new National Migration Policy and proposed amendments to the Employment Services Act of 2014. A strong focus over the medium-term period will be on the rapid implementation of these amendments, which is expected to provide more employment opportunities for young South Africans, particularly in the hospitality, tourism and agriculture sectors.

The DEL planned to continue the Pathway Management Network, which is a Presidential Youth Employment Initiative. The network is expected to create opportunities for employment, support increased access to relevant education and training interventions, assist young people in making choices about learning and/or earning, and identify barriers to entry in the labour market.

Regulating the workplace

The department planned to conduct an annual review of the national minimum wage over the medium term. This will include the development of monitoring mechanisms to measure its impact on the economy, collective bargaining, the reduction of income differentials, and proposed adjustments. The Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration spearheads the department's efforts in this regard.



THE PRESIDENCY

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO **SOUTH AFRICA**

2022/23

The Presidency

The Presidency is mandated to ensure that the President can execute his constitutional responsibilities in leading and galvanising government and society to implement the electoral mandate.

Over the medium term, the department planned to continue providing support to the President and Deputy President in the execution of their responsibilities, as outlined in Chapter 5 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996.

The department also planned to focus on enhancing leadership and partnerships through stakeholder engagements to promote the country's social transformation agenda, facilitating economic growth and job creation, and operationalising the e-Cabinet system.

Enhancing leadership and partnerships

The District Development Model (DDM) is aimed at improving coherence and integrated planning in South Africa's 44 districts and eight metros to improve service delivery.

To enhance coordination between spheres of government, over the medium term, The Presidency planned to continue providing leadership and playing a coordinating role through its oversight of the model and, through the Presidential Imbizo, oversee its implementation. The department plans to produce one report per year over the medium-term period on oversight visits.

Over the medium term, the department planned to continue strengthening partnerships among government departments, civil society and the private sector through a number of engagements.

For example, the office of the Deputy President, working with the South African National AIDS Council and other stakeholders, will continue to support the goals of the National Strategic Plan for HIV, TB and sexually transmitted infections by ensuring that meetings take place with stakeholders and that responses to these epidemics are well coordinated.

The department intends to have engagements with partners and stakeholders each year over the medium term to promote the country's social transformation agenda. This includes continuing to work with provincial governments to expedite the profiling of military veterans to recognise their contribution to South Africa's democracy, and ensure that they are provided with support and benefits – such as education, housing and pensions – to lead their lives with dignity, as required in terms of the Military Veterans Act of 2011.

Facilitating economic growth and job creation initiatives

Government recognises that employment creation and job retention are paramount to rebuilding and enhancing South Africa's economy. In this regard, The Presidency leads South Africa's Economic Reconstruction and Recovery Plan (ERRP) by facilitating and coordinating the Operation Vulindlela economic reform programme and the Presidential Employment Initiative, which are aimed at accelerating and facilitating investment, trade promotion, economic growth

and job creation. This entails providing young people with business skills and access to market and network opportunities, and driving progress on the recovery agenda.

Operationalising the e-Cabinet system

The e-Cabinet system is a tool for streamlining Cabinet's decision-making processes and ensuring that it adopts an integrated approach to governance. The system provides a collaborative platform for members of the executive, heads of department and executive support staff to share, manage and store information securely.

Over the medium term, The Presidency planned to continue providing training to all users, including executives and limited support staff who communicate, manage, capture and distribute classified information for the overall optimal functioning of Cabinet and its committees.

Operation Vulindlela (OV)

Government is working to unlock the structural constraints to inclusive economic growth through OV, which brings together the ability of The Presidency to coordinate across government at a political and administrative level, and the technical expertise of National Treasury.

The core purpose of OV is to unleash critical sectors to accelerate the implementation of structural reforms and enable higher economic growth. The initiative aims to modernise and transform network industries, including electricity, water, transport and digital communications. These network industries are the bedrock of economic growth, and are essential to creating a globally competitive economy.

By mid-2023, OV was working closely with the Department of Public Enterprises, the Department of Transport and Transnet to finalise a roadmap for the freight logistics sector. This roadmap will shortly be completed and will outline the actions to improve the performance of ports and rail as well as measures to reform Transnet and create an efficient and competitive freight logistics system.

To address the challenges in freight rail and port operations, we are forging cooperation at a very practical level with businesses and unions in sectors such as logistics, agriculture, auto, mining and forestry.

Infrastructure and Investment Office (IIO)

The IIO was established by The President of South Africa to co-ordinate and align the work of various structures responsible for economic and social infrastructure development.

As the demand for infrastructure in Africa continues to grow, the government will need to leverage public and private funds to marshal investments to bridge the infrastructure divide.

New approaches to delivering infrastructure are needed, and so is innovative technology and effective collaboration between policymakers, sector agencies,

financiers, and investors to fund and deliver projects to yield financial and non-financial returns for all stakeholders.

A further key role of the IIO is its mandate to solve regulatory and other bottlenecks which are prohibitive to investment, as well as play a leading role in accelerating decision-making in order for high priority investments to be speedily and efficiently implemented.

Investment

By 2023, five years had passed since President Cyril Ramaphosa embarked on an ambitious investment drive to raise R1.2 trillion in new investment to boost the economy of South Africa.

At the 5th South Africa Investment Conference held at the Sandton Convention Centre in Sandton, Johannesburg on 13 April 2023, the initial target was surpassed when over R1.5 trillion was raised through investment commitments.

Minister in The Presidency

The Minister is responsible for the:

- Statistics South Africa (Stats SA);
- Government Communication and Information System (GCIS)
- State Security Agency (SSA);
- Media Development and Diversity Agency (MDDA); and
- Brand South Africa (Brand SA).

Statistics South Africa

Stats SA is a national department accountable to the Minister in The Presidency. The department's activities are regulated by the Statistics Act of 1999, which mandates the department to advance the production, dissemination, use and coordination of official and other statistics to assist organs of state, businesses, other organisations and the public in planning, monitoring, policy development and decision-making.

The Act also requires that the department coordinates statistical production among organs of state in line with the purpose of official statistics and statistical principles.

Modernising the operating model

To deliver statistical products and services better, faster and more cost effectively, the department is modernising its operating model. This entails introducing and implementing various innovative technologies over the medium term to optimise and automate statistical operations, including digital data collection methods for household surveys such as the census.

In response to the increasing demand for data and statistics, the department will be establishing an interconnected statistical system that facilitates data acquisition, integration, analysis and visualisation.

Implementing the continuous population survey

In 2023/24, Stats SA planned to work on reconceptualising the continuous population survey. This entails integrating several existing household surveys into a single continuous data collection vehicle with the objective of producing frequent lower-level data.

The department aimed to conduct integrated surveys to measure poverty and household living conditions, and was also conducting a national income and expenditure survey to measure living conditions by collecting data on household income and expenditure patterns. A sample of 30 000 households across the country has been included in the survey, which is expected to be published in 2024/25.

Releasing the results of Census 2022

On 10 October 2023, Statistician-General, Mr Risenga Maluleke, handed over the Census 2022 report to President Ramaphosa in Pretoria, and also announced the results of the population and housing count to the country.

Census 2022 was the fourth population and housing count in post-apartheid South Africa, the first being conducted in 1996, and subsequent censuses being conducted in 2001 and 2011 respectively.

The population and housing census, which was conducted in February 2022, provided comprehensive data on population size, demographic trends and other information related to service delivery.

Government Communication and Information System

The mandate of the GCIS is derived from Section 195(1)(g) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, which stipulates that the public should be provided with information that is timely, accurate and accessible. This is in support of the constitutional principles of freedom of expression, and transparent and open governance.

The department is responsible for providing strategic leadership and coordinating government communication to ensure that members of the public are informed and have access to government programmes and policies that benefit them.

Over the medium term, the GCIS planned to continue focusing on providing and facilitating strategic government communication and facilitating active citizen participation by rendering core communication activities and driving key national priority campaigns.

The department aimed to continue publishing *Vuk'uzenzele* newspaper, which is the only national publication that is focused on government's key priorities, with an emphasis on service delivery programmes and the opportunities created by government.

The GCIS was expected to conduct activations across the country that entail direct interactions with citizens, mostly in area-specific local languages.

Key activities include printing pamphlets and information brochures, and

advertising on social media, and radio and television stations. Activations will be initiated based on domestic and foreign media engagements, and important government and national events such as the State of the Nation Address.

Over the medium term, it planned to drive national priority campaigns on gender-based violence and femicide (GBVF), anti-corruption in government, and the ERRP. These campaigns are primarily aimed at raising awareness and informing the public on progress made in dealing with these challenges, and will be conducted through social media, community radio stations, television, newspapers, and distributing leaflets and flyers.

The GCIS continues to drive a variety of its own products and platforms to ensure that information reached South Africans. These include the fortnightly *Vuk'uzenzele* newspaper, daily News Service (SAnews); weekly *My District Today* newsletter, monthly *Public Sector Manager* magazine and annual *South Africa Yearbook*.

The department also engages with the public through campaigns and outreach programmes. These include community radio talk shows, activations at taxi ranks and malls, information blitzes on commuter trains, and social media campaigns.

It also holds a community and stakeholder engagements term in the form of dialogues, meetings, webinars and community radio talk shows with sector departments, civil society, youth formations, faith-based organisations and business forums.

In addition to these initiatives, the department conducts development communication projects to enhance service delivery and keep citizens informed and empowered on government's progress and projects.

Media Development and Diversity Agency

The MDDA's core activity is to provide financial and non-financial support to community broadcast projects, and community and small commercial media print and digital projects. Its emphasis is on promoting indigenous languages and contributing to community development and the alleviation of poverty and inequality.

The agency also planned to intensify its focus on ensuring the sustainability of media projects in communities that are underserved by mainstream media.

Brand South Africa

Brand SA was established in 2002 to manage South Africa's nation brand with the aim of improving the country's global reputation and competitiveness. The entity's primary objective is to develop and implement proactive and coordinated reputation management, communications and marketing strategies for South Africa to attract investment, trade and tourism.

Over the medium term, the entity aimed to focus on implementing activities that contribute to positively shaping South Africa's image and reputation. This includes using research to monitor sentiment and the nation brand's performance; analysing trends and providing insights to inform decision-making and

communications strategies; and communicating the country's value proposition and values, and highlighting progress.

State Security Agency

The mandate of the SSA is to provide government with intelligence on domestic and foreign threats or potential threats to national stability, the constitutional order, and the safety and well-being of the people. Examples of such threats are terrorism, sabotage and subversion. This allows government to implement policies to deal with potential threats and to better understand existing threats and thus improve their policies.

Among the areas of focus of the SSA are the following matters of national interest:

- **Terrorism**, which refers to deliberate and premeditated attempts to create terror through symbolic acts involving the use or threats of lethal force for creating psychological effects that will influence a target group or individual and translate it into political or material results.
- **Sabotage**, which refers to activities or purposeful omissions conducted or planned for purposes of endangering the safety, security or defence of vital public or private property, such as installations, structures, equipment or systems.
- **Subversion**, which includes activities directed towards undermining by convert unlawful acts or directed towards, or intended ultimately to lead to the destruction or overthrow by violence of the constitutionally established systems of government in South Africa.
- **Espionage**, which refers to unlawful or unauthorised activities conducted for acquiring information or assets relating to sensitive social, political, economic, scientific or military matters of South Africa or for their unauthorised communication to a foreign state.
- **Organised Crime**, which includes analysis of the origins and reasons behind organised crime, the identification of key role players, the nature and extent, as well as the modus operandi of organised crime syndicates.

Minister in The Presidency for Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation

The Minister is responsible for the:

- Department of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation.

Department of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation

The DPME is mandated to:

- support the National Planning Commission (NPC);
- facilitate the implementation of the NDP through the development of sector-specific and outcome-specific medium-term plans and delivery agreements, and monitor and evaluate their implementation;

- ensure the alignment of departmental strategic and annual plans and budget allocations with government's Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF);
- monitor the performance of individual national and provincial government departments and municipalities, and facilitate targeted intervention programmes;
- monitor frontline service delivery and manage the presidential hotline;
- develop and implement the annual national evaluations plan, and support the national evaluations system; and
- promote good planning, monitoring and evaluation practices in government.

Over the medium term, the DPME planned to focus on supporting the implementation of the NDP, coordinating planning programmes across government, and monitoring and evaluation to support the implementation of government programmes and priorities.

Supporting the implementation of the NDP through the NPC

The DPME is tasked with facilitating the implementation of the NDP. This is carried out by the NPC and its secretariat, which is mandated to provide an independent and critical view of the country's developmental trajectory, monitor its implementation, and provide feedback and guidance.

Over the medium term, the NPC planned to participate in and initiate 3 research projects in support of the implementation of the NDP while engaging all social partners and forging new partnerships.

To realise this, the commission planned to facilitate a strategic engagement and partnership in each year over the medium term to develop cross-cutting views on specific issues with the aim of finding sustainable and innovative solutions to obstacles that hinder the implementation of the NDP.

Coordinating planning programmes across government

In an effort to strengthen coherence and harmony across government's planning system, the department has developed a policy framework for integrated planning. To give effect to this, it has developed guidelines on the institutionalisation of the MTSF to support the integration of its priorities and targets across the planning system.

The department aims to ensure that enhanced planning finds expression across all spheres of government through the DDM, which addresses challenges to government service delivery by promoting local procurement to enhance job creation, promote and support local businesses, and involve communities.

The model's approach to planning and implementation aims to improve coherence among all spheres of government, as well as the 44 districts and eight metros across the country, as development spaces that can be used as centres of service delivery and economic development, including job creation.

Monitoring to support the implementation and achievement of government programmes and priorities

To promote the alignment, coordination and integration of development planning, in line with realising the NDP's development outcomes, the department will monitor the implementation of government's 2019-2024 MTSF over the medium term, which entails the production of a targeted two integrated monitoring reports per year.

To improve the quality of service delivery, the department is also tasked with monitoring frontline services, including complaints and compliments received through the presidential hotline, and plans to produce two reports per year over the medium term on frontline service delivery.

Evaluating to support the implementation and achievement of government programmes and priorities

In line with the NDP's vision to build a capable and developmental state, the department will, through the National Evaluation Policy Framework, manage and support the evaluation of priority government policies, programmes and systems, and produce a targeted 12 evaluation reports over the medium term to support evidence-based planning, monitoring and evaluation across government.

The department will continue to develop the centralised data management system, which is expected to provide users – including government departments, members of the public and academics – with an improved interface for accessing, retrieving, analysing and reporting on government performance information.

The system is envisaged to act as a knowledge hub to enable a greater understanding of the effectiveness of government interventions and their impact on society.

Minister in The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities

The Minister is responsible for the:

- Department of Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities (DWYPD); and
- National Youth Development Agency (NYDA).

Department of Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities

The mandate of the DWYPD is to regulate the socioeconomic transformation and implementation of the empowerment and participation of women, youth and persons with disabilities. Over the medium-term period, the department planned to continue focusing on addressing GBV and supporting empowerment; promoting responsive planning, budgeting, monitoring and evaluation across government; supporting youth empowerment; and promoting the rights of people with disabilities.

Addressing GBVF and supporting empowerment

The National Council on GBVF Bill was submitted to Parliament in 2022/23 and the launch of the council was expected in 2023/24. The council will be tasked with coordinating and overseeing the national response to GBVF. The department aimed to facilitate public awareness and advocacy events, and support and monitor the implementation of the National Strategic Plan on GBVF.

The Commission for Gender Equality (CGE) planned to work towards gender equality by strengthening the legislative environment, public information and education, and investigating issues that undermine gender equality.

Promoting responsive planning, budgeting, monitoring and evaluation

Over the medium term, the DWYPD planned to continue coordinating, monitoring and evaluate the implementation of responsive planning, budgeting, monitoring, evaluation and auditing frameworks across government for women, young people and people with disabilities.

It aimed to continue assessing the strategic and annual performance plans of other departments to ensure that they are responsive to policy priorities relating to the rights of women, young people and people with disabilities; and monitor compliance with international commitments on issues pertaining to these groups, as well as develop country reports.

In each year over the next three years, the department planned to conduct 12 stakeholder engagements on the empowerment of women, young people and people with disabilities, and four community mobilisation events on national commemoration days.

Supporting youth empowerment

To advance the socio-economic empowerment of young people, the DWYPD planned to continue developing and reviewing policies, legislation and frameworks to guide government and other stakeholders on youth development.

Promoting the rights of people with disabilities

Over the period ahead, the department planned to continue advocating for services for people with disabilities. As part of these efforts, it planned to develop the Disability Rights Bill in partnership with the South African Law Reform Commission.

National Youth Development Agency

The NYDA Act of 2008 is the founding legislation of the NYDA. The agency's role is to initiate, implement, facilitate and monitor youth development interventions aimed at facilitating the empowerment of young people and their participation in economic activity, and promoting social cohesion.

The NYDA continues to support and foster entrepreneurship among young people, and create employment pathways through cross-sectoral collaborations. Over the medium-term period, the agency planned to support 10 400 enterprises

owned by young people and provide business development interventions to 87 000 young people. Young people will be helped to find sustainable employment opportunities through jobs programmes.

The National Youth Service Programme (NYSP) will over the medium term support young people and encourage them to stay engaged in service to their communities and build the spirit of patriotism, solidarity and social cohesion.

As part of the Presidential Employment Initiative, the agency has partnered with the Jobs Fund to implement the revitalised NYSP. This funding is expected to provide for project management costs, training and stipends for young people participating in the programme.

Commission for Gender Equality

The CGE is an independent statutory body established in terms of Section 181 of the Constitution. It is mandated to strengthen and deepen constitutional democracy with a focus on attaining a society free from gender oppression and inequality. Its powers and functions are laid out in Section 187 of the Constitution and further prescribed in the CGE Act of 1996, as amended.

Over the medium term, the CGE aimed to continue focusing on activities that advance legislation, policies and advocacy that contribute to gender equality. In pursuit of this, the commission plans to engage with relevant stakeholders, conduct outreach programmes for awareness and education, handle complaints, investigate issues that undermine the attainment of gender equality and the empowerment of women, conduct research to inform government's response, and make written submissions to Parliament.

Human capital plays a crucial role in the commission's work because it focuses on research and engagement with stakeholders. As such, spending on compensation of employees accounts for an estimated 66.7% (R205.1 million) of its budget over the MTEF period, increasing from R65.1 million in 2022/23 to R71.4 million in 2025/26 at an average annual rate of 3.1%. The commission derives all of its revenue through transfers from the department, which are set to amount to R295.3 million over the MTEF period.

Minister in The Presidency for Electricity

The Minister is responsible for overseeing all aspects of the electricity crisis response, including the work of the National Energy Crisis Committee. This will provide a single point of command for government's efforts to close the shortfall in electricity supply.

The Minister works full-time with the Eskom board and management to end load-shedding and ensure the implementation of the Energy Action Plan. Among other things, the Minister of Electricity has the powers to direct the procurement of new generation capacity and ensure security of supply.



AGRICULTURE,
LAND REFORM
AND RURAL
DEVELOPMENT

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
SOUTH AFRICA

2022/23

Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development

The mandate of the Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development (DALRRD) includes developing agricultural value chains, providing agricultural inputs, and monitoring production and consumption in the agriculture sector, as well as facilitating comprehensive rural development.

The department executes its mandate by implementing, managing and overseeing key legislation, including the:

- **Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act of 1983**, which makes provision for control over the use of the country's natural agricultural resources to conserve soil, water sources and vegetation;
- **Agricultural Product Standards Act of 1990**, which provides for control over the sale and export of certain agricultural products, and the sale of some imported agricultural products;
- **Provision of Land and Assistance Act of 1993**, which makes provision for the designation of certain land, the regulation of the subdivision of such land, and the settlement of people on it. It also provides for the acquisition, maintenance, planning, development, improvement and disposal of property, and the provision of financial assistance for land reform;
- **Restitution of Land Rights Act of 1994**, which makes provision for the restitution of rights to land to people or communities dispossessed of such rights after 19 June 1913 because of racially discriminatory laws or practices of the past. To administer this task, the Act established a Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights and a Land Claims Court;
- **Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act of 2013**, which seeks to enable the transformation of South Africa's settlement patterns by adopting a new approach to spatial planning and the management of land use.

Over the medium term, the DALRRD was expected to continue focusing on improving agricultural production and revitalising infrastructure, accelerating land reform and finalising land restitution claims, and increasing the department's research and development capacity to improve agricultural outputs.

Improving agricultural production and revitalising infrastructure

Over the medium term, the department was expected to work on implementing the Agriculture and Agro-processing Master Plan (AAMP). The plan has buy-in from various constituents across the agricultural value chain, including the South African Grain Farmers Association, the Grain Farmer Development Association, the South African Sugar Association, the South African Pork Producers' Organisation, the South African Poultry Association, the National Emergent Red Meat Producers' Organisation, and the South African Mohair Growers' Association.

This will see retailers and agro-processors commit a minimum of 3% of their net profit after tax to programmes aimed at investing in black farmers and black-owned agri-businesses.

As part of the master plan, the department planned to intensify the implementation of the agri-parks model – which includes creating farmer production support units, agri-hubs, irrigation schemes and other socio-economic infrastructure – as part of its drive to revitalise agricultural infrastructure.

This model is primarily intended to improve rural employment, support industrialisation efforts by smallholder farmers, support rural economic development, and create capacity in agro-processing and industrialisation value chains for broad-based job creation and market access opportunities.

Implementing the model also entails determining the viability of and allocation of state land (including communal land) for agricultural production. The department plans to implement infrastructure projects over the medium period as part of the agri-parks model.

Accelerating land reform and finalising land restitution claims

Government's land reform programme is fundamental to responding to South Africa's triple challenge of inequality, poverty and unemployment. The department plays a central role in coordinating this response by purchasing land, settling people on it and providing assisting post-settlement.

Government also aimed to acquire substantial hectares of land specifically to provide security of tenure to farm dwellers and labour tenants. The department is crucial in government's response in settling land restitution claims to ensure that land is returned to its rightful owners before they were dispossessed through the colonial or apartheid regimes, and to ensure that claimants are able to use it for both settlement and productive purposes.

Increasing research and development capacity to improve agricultural outputs

Over the period ahead, the department planned to enhance capacity in research and development to improve logistics, the safety and quality of agricultural products, and market access.

Among other things, studies will be commissioned to inform biosecurity decision-making, particularly on the management and control of pests and diseases. The streamlining of the policy and legislative framework related to quarantine and regulated plant pest surveillances is expected to improve market access.

Role of agriculture

Agriculture plays an important role in the process of economic development and can contribute significantly to household food security. South Africa's rich agricultural heritage has long been an integral component of the nation's economy and cultural fabric.

About 9% of agricultural output is produced by previously disadvantaged farmers, implying the sector is growing and gradually improving on inclusivity. The growth in agriculture could be attributed to the enhancement of its

competitiveness, made possible by clear policies, regulatory environment and financing instruments such as the statutory measures and agricultural trusts that have financed the collection of industry data, market development, transformation, and research and development as well as innovations.

The National Development Plan (NDP): Vision 2030 recognises the need to integrate rural areas in agricultural development by mainly expanding irrigated areas and promoting dry-land farming where feasible. The NDP further envisions the conversion of underutilised land in communal areas and land reform projects into commercial production.

The DALRRD aimed to focus on these areas, including engagements with Amakhosi to facilitate the development of areas-based plans to revive agricultural production. It has been engaged in drone flyovers in some communal areas to map them to facilitate better planning.

The surveillance of pests and diseases is key not only for our country's agricultural production but equally important to maintain the confidence of trading partners, especially when the pest or disease has a quarantine categorisation in the territory of the trading partner.

Through engagements with partners such as the National Animal Health Forum, the department has been able to engage industry on animal disease control matters, including on surveillance.

It will continue its surveillance and intervention measures of the exotic fruit fly, Citrus Greening and Banana Bunchy Top Virus as well as surveillance of livestock diseases of economic importance including the Foot-and-Mouth Disease (FMD) and, Contagious Bovine Pleuropneumonia. Control of the FMD in recent months has demonstrated a need for investment in prevention rather than control.

Agri-Industrial Fund

Agricultural financing remains the critical element in ensuring that agriculture remains the productive sector of the economy, which contributes to food security, poverty alleviation and job creation. Production finance needs to take into consideration the variables that are inherent in the cycle of production of relevant commodities as well as risks. Non-financial services to producers are equally important in order to reduce the default rate from farmers.

International trade and market access

The world of agriculture, including its trade, as governed by the World Trade Organisation (WTO) Agreement on Agriculture has been stagnant over the last decade. The aspiration of establishing a fair and market-oriented agriculture trading system has been elusive. Ministerial conference after Ministerial conference have not yielded the desired reforms in agriculture.

At the WTO's 12th Ministerial Conference held in Geneva, Switzerland in June 2022, member countries adopted the Sanitary and Phytosanitary Standards (SPS) Declaration, which responds to modern SPS challenges. A Ministerial Declaration on the Emergency Response to Food Insecurity was also adopted to provide for

emergency measures that countries must take during unforeseen situations to ensure global food security. At the 13th Ministerial Conference in the United Arab Emirates in February 2024, South Africa aimed to push for reforms that would create a fair agricultural trading system. Government's efforts to improve market access for South Africa's products on the international markets are bearing fruit.

In June 2022, government signed the Protocol of Phytosanitary Requirements for export of Soybean from South Africa to China and in August 2022, it successfully negotiated the lifting of a ban on South Africa's wool and other cloven-hoofed animals 'skin products with China.

There were several inspections in favour of South African animal and plant products in export markets such as Saudi Arabia.

In May 2023, a total of 54 million tons of maize for feed from South Africa docked in the port of Dongguan, China. This import of maize was captioned in China as it is reported that it has injected long-term impetus into food security, strengthening agricultural cooperation of China with South Africa, and promoting the interconnection of industrial supply chains between the two countries.

Agro-Energy Fund

To address alternative energy sources in the sector, the DALRRD was setting up the "Agro-Energy Fund" at the Land Bank, to focus on energy intensive agricultural activities. These will include irrigation, intensive agricultural production systems and cold chain related activities. The following criteria will be used:

- A large-scale farmer will receive 30% grant funding to be matched with 70% loan portion, where the grant amount is capped at the maximum of R1.5 million.
- A medium scale farmer will receive a 50% grant to be matched with 50% loan portion, where the grant is capped at the maximum of R1 million.
- Smallholder farmers will be supported by a grant portion of 70% to be matched with 30% loan. For this category the maximum grant funding is capped by R500 000. There will be a special recognition and application mechanism for small-scale irrigation schemes.

Master plans:

Agriculture and Agro-processing Master Plan

After recognising different challenges constraining the growth and development of commercial and emerging farmers in the country, the AAMP had recommended the adoption of a "Theory of Change" to train farmers and grow the agricultural sector in an inclusive manner.

The theory advocates for a co-existence of commercial and emerging farmers to promote the agricultural and food sectors on a new growth trajectory that can ultimately contribute to taking South Africa's economy out of the "Middle Income" trap. This AAMP is complementary to the Poultry and Sugar Master plans.

Cannabis Master Plan

The legalisation and commercialisation of cannabis have been at the forefront of public debate and on top of the agenda of policymakers globally. An interdepartmental team comprising representatives from various departments was established to guide the development of the National Cannabis Master Plan with the DALRRD as the convener.

The current Private Members Bill has been expanded to include commercialisation of cannabis and hemp. By mid-2023, the National Assembly was seized with processing public comments on this section of the Bill. The Inter-Ministerial Committee has also been meeting to give direction to ensuring that interim measures on commercialisation of hemp are realised.

These measures include changes to the existing THC limit for hemp to 1% and amendment of Schedules 4 and 6 of the and Related Substances Control Act of 1965. Demonstration sites for hemp production have since been set up in Rustenburg in North West and Roodeplaat in Gauteng. By mid-2023, the department had issued 397 hemp permits for hemp production.

Poultry Master Plan

The poultry industry consists of the day-old chick supply industry, the broiler industry and the egg industry. Overall, the poultry industry in South Africa is the largest segment of the agricultural sector, contributing approximately 20% of its share to the gross domestic product (GDP and 41% of animal GDP).

The South African Poultry Master Plan has been developed in partnership between government and stakeholders in the industry drawn from poultry producers, farmers, processors, exporters, importers and organised labour. The introduction of a poultry sub-sector master plan in the country aims to stimulate local demand, boost exports and protect the domestic chicken industry. The Poultry Master Plan takes into account several systematic and other problems in the industry.

The main objectives of the plan are centered on driving local demand and protecting the local industry, reducing feed costs, meeting safety and veterinary requirements, as well as compliance to boost exports and transformation.

The master plan set a number of targets and a number of detailed actions would be implemented. These actions had been identified through the five (5) pillars that were instrumental in refocusing the Poultry sub-sector and building its future.

- The first pillar included the establishment of partnerships to increase production and availability of feed, while simultaneously ensuring that workers were provided with training and development opportunities.
- The second pillar entailed driving domestic demand and the affordability of local broiler products.
- The third pillar concerned the establishment of the safety and veterinary requirements within markets and offering producers opportunities for exporting their chicken products.

- The fourth pillar was the introduction of measures to enhance the regulatory environment and ensure compliance. This will include making products traceable and announcing measures to ensure that the industry as a whole complies with trade requirements.
- The last pillar aimed to protect the local chicken industry by considering specific, rather than ad valorem tariffs, simplifying trade systems, undertaking anti-dumping measures where appropriate, and considering the introduction of import licences to support compliance.

Entities:

Agricultural Land Holding Account (ALHA)

The ALHA was established in 2009 in terms of the Provision of Land and Assistance Act of 1993. The Act authorises the Minister of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development to purchase land to enable the department to accelerate the land redistribution process, acquire land in nodal areas and other areas of high agricultural potential, improve the process of identifying and selecting beneficiaries and the planning of land on which people could be settled, and ensure that acquired land is used productively.

The ALHA aimed to focus on promoting equitable land redistribution and agricultural development over the medium term by acquiring a targeted 115 467 hectares of strategically located land, of which 50% is set to be allocated to women, 40% to young people and 10% to people with disabilities.

Agricultural Research Council (ARC)

The ARC is the main agricultural research institution in South Africa. It was established by the Agricultural Research Act of 1990 and is mandated to conduct research and development and effect the transfer of technology to promote agriculture and industry; contribute to better quality of life; and facilitate and ensure the conservation of natural resources.

Over the medium term, the council planned to focus on: generating knowledge and technologies that will enhance the efficiencies of crop production, animal production and health; managing natural resources; developing a foot- and-mouth vaccine production facility at Onderstepoort to reduce reliance on imports; maintaining national assets; and providing diagnostic and analytical services on behalf of the department.

In an effort to ensure the integrity of the food value chain and protect consumers from food fraud and their rights to food choices, the ARC has partnered with the DALRRD in using whole genome sequencing to investigate and curb the incidences of contamination and adulteration of meat products with undeclared species.

The country has experienced an unprecedented increase in disease outbreaks. This resulted in an unprecedented number of samples being submitted from the field. The ARC rose to the occasion by responding excellently and timeously processing all the samples without fail. To ensure that the country has sufficient

capacity to produce the FMD vaccine in future, the ARC had by mid-2023 completed Phase I of the FMD Vaccine Production Facility towards a fully fledged facility that will be able to fully meet the requirements of the country and beyond.

KwaZulu-Natal Ingonyama Trust Board

The KwaZulu-Natal Ingonyama Trust Act of 1994 makes provision for an estimated 2.8 million hectares of land spread across KwaZulu-Natal to be held in trust by the Ingonyama Trust on behalf of communities. The KwaZulu-Natal Ingonyama Trust Board, which was established in terms of the Act, administers the trust. Over the medium term, the board will focus on improving its administration of land tenure and engaging in spatial planning to ensure integrated development.

National Agricultural Marketing Council (NAMC)

The NAMC is a statutory organisation of the DALRRD. It derives its mandate from the Marketing of Agricultural Products Act of 1996, which provides for the authorisation, establishment and enforcement of regulatory measures to intervene in the marketing of agricultural products, including the introduction of statutory measures.

Over the medium term, the council planned to continue coordinating the work of agricultural industry trusts; undertake thorough research aimed at advising the minister and affected groups on marketing matters; and work directly with farmers to address their marketing needs.

The NAMC has continued to offer valuable market information and analysis to both government and the agricultural sector. Such information has enabled agri-entrepreneurs to make informed decisions in terms of marketing of their products. By mid-2023, the NAMC was finalising the construction of the feedlots that were already in the process of construction as part of the National Red Meat Programme.

Office of the Valuer-General (OVG)

The Property Valuation Act of 2014 prescribes that the OVG must be impartial in exercising its powers and performing its functions, and be accountable to the Minister of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development.

The Act states that the office must value all land to be acquired for the purpose of land reform in accordance with a defined set of criteria based on Section 25(3) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996. Over the medium term, the OVG planned to continue focusing on valuing all land for land reform purposes and complete 100% of requested valuations.

Onderstepoort Biological Products (OBP)

The OBP was established in terms of the OBP Incorporation Act of 1999, with government as the sole shareholder. It is mandated to prevent and control animal diseases that affect food security, human health and livelihoods by developing, manufacturing and commercialising animal vaccines, and ensuring food security

through the promotion of animal health. Over the medium term, the OBP planned to focus on the development and manufacturing of vaccines and related products to prevent and control animal diseases that threaten food security and animal health. It will also seek to maintain a reserve stock of vaccines for government to be used in the event of an outbreak of animal diseases.

Perishable Products Export Control Board (PPECB)

The PPECB is an independent provider of quality assurance, food safety and cold chain management services for producers and exporters of perishable food products.

The board is mandated by government in terms of the Perishable Products Export Control Act of 1983, which broadly requires it to ensure the orderly export of perishables and monitor the proper maintenance of a continuous cold chain for exports; and the Agricultural Products Standards Act of 1990, which broadly requires the board to monitor the minimum quality standards of perishable exports as required by government and bilateral agreements with importing countries.

Over the medium term, the PPECB planned to focus on ensuring sustainable, socially responsible service delivery without compromising the quality of products. This included performing technical research and development, providing training and assistance to historically disadvantaged individuals and smallholder farmers, and ensuring its personnel are professional and well trained so that they add value to the perishable export industry.

Registration of Deeds Trading Account

The Deeds Registries Act of 1937 makes provision for the administration of the land registration system and the registration of rights in land. The Act requires that deeds and documents be prepared and lodged in the deeds registry by a conveyancer or public notary, and scrutinised for accuracy and compliance with common law, case law and statutory law. The entity's main goal is to contribute to effective land planning, administration and property registration.

Over the medium term, the Registration of Deeds Trading Account planned to implement an electronic deeds registration system that is expected to result in a secure, more accessible, integrated, innovative, scalable, cost effective and sustainable deeds registration system that provides accurate and reliable land administration and information.

The system was expected to accommodate the registration or recording of other insecure land tenure rights and lead to enhanced confidence in the country's land registration process, as stipulated in the Electronic Deeds Registration Act of 2019.



COMMUNICATIONS

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO **SOUTH AFRICA**

2022/23

Communications and Digital Technologies

The Department of Communications and Digital Technologies (DCDT) is mandated to enable South Africa's digital transformation to achieve digital inclusion and economic growth by creating an enabling policy and regulatory environment. Its goal is to enable the digital sector to grow to its full potential while guaranteeing that everyone has access to reliable, affordable, and high-speed connectivity.

This is done through the implementation of the 2016 *National Integrated Information and Communications Technology (ICT) Policy White Paper*, which provides for the participation of multiple stakeholders for inclusive digital transformation; interventions to reinforce competition and facilitate innovation across the value chain; measures to address issues raised by ICT and convergence; and the establishment of a new national postal policy framework.

It also provides for policies to address the digital divide and affordable access, supply-side issues and infrastructure rollout, and demand-side issues to facilitate inclusivity. The department derives its mandate from several acts and policies, including the:

- **Films and Publications Act of 1996**, as amended, which provides for the classification of certain films and publications, and establishes the Film and Publication Board (FPB) and the appeals tribunal;
- **Postal Services Act of 1998**, as amended, which provides for the regulation of postal services;
- **Broadcasting Act of 1999**, as amended, which establishes broadcasting policy in South Africa;
- **Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (ICASA) Act of 2000**, which establishes the regulator in the sector;
- **Electronic Communications Act of 2005**, as amended, which provides the legal framework for convergence in the broadcasting, broadcasting signal distribution, and telecommunications sectors. It also allows for the granting of new licences and social obligations; the control of the radio frequency spectrum; and the regulation of electronic communication network services, electronic communication services, and broadcasting services.

Over the medium term, the department planned to focus on coordinating the roll-out of broadband into underserved areas through the South Africa Connect project, and enabling digital transformation and inclusion through legislative and regulatory interventions.

South Africa continues to play a pivotal role in the international community where we are a strong voice advocating the interests of developing countries in creating a stable and secure global ICT environment that supports inclusive development.

The country is a member of the International Telecommunications Union (ITU), a United Nations specialised agency dealing with the ICT sector globally. During the ITU plenipotentiary conference in 2022, South Africa was successfully re-elected onto the ITU Council.

Rolling out broadband in underserved areas

In his February 2023 State of the Nation Address, President Cyril Ramaphosa highlighted the country's vision of providing affordable, high-speed internet access to all. The DCDT is committed to realising this vision through various programmes and legislative interventions.

The department, supported by relevant state-owned entities such as Broadband Infraco (BBI), Sentech, and the State Information Technology Agency (SITA), will continue to provide broadband connectivity to 970 government facilities over the medium-term period through Phase 1 of the South Africa Connect project.

In the 2023/24 and 2024/25 financial years, the department planned to implement Phase 2 of the project for capital equipment and new fibre infrastructure, or to lease existing fibre, to expand ICT networks into underserved areas.

Phase 2 also involves the SITA upgrading and connecting government sites from existing budgets, and the ICASA imposing universal service obligations on mobile network operators to connect 18 036 schools, 3 873 health facilities and 8 241 tribal authority sites.

Enabling digital transformation and inclusion

The department continues to provide a supporting and enabling legislative environment through the development of relevant policies, strategies and legislation. Over the medium period, it was expected to finalise the Audio-Visual Bill, introduce the South African Broadcasting Corporation Bill to Parliament, submit the Digital Economy Framework and Strategy for approval to Cabinet, finalise the national cloud computing policy and develop the Postal Services Amendment Bill.

Connecting South Africa

South Africa is widely recognised as having one of the most advanced digital ecosystems in the continent. Its key features include over 300 000 kilometres of fibre distributed across the country, which is the result of significant investment by both the public and private sectors. This country has the advantage of being connected to eight undersea cables that physically connect this continent to neighbouring continents.

The Equiano cable by Google, working with Telkom, will provide exponential capacity to the digital ecosystem and triple the internet speeds in the country and significantly reduce the cost of data.

Through our flagship programme, SA Connect, the department aimed to bridge the digital divide by providing Wi-Fi access to communities and ensuring universal access to the internet. In 2023, it planned to deploy 9 900 hotspots in 16 districts across the country, with the aim of reaching 80% connectivity by 2024.

In the 2021/22 financial year, the department successfully maintained its 970 connected sites. In addition, during that period, SITA connected 781 government sites in the Eastern Cape, while BBI connected 110 Universal Service and Access Agency of South Africa (USAASA) sites.

Furthermore, the department played an instrumental role in facilitating the development of the SA Connect draft Implementation Plan.

It aimed to enhance connectivity to government facilities such as schools, health facilities, and government offices with high-speed internet access, which enable them to serve as connectivity hubs for their users and surrounding communities.

SITA was expected to launch a National Broadband Project worth at least R6 billion, that will be awarded per region and ensure that government reduces the cost and duplication of connectivity infrastructure from municipalities up to national government level.

This project must also ensure that designated groups such as enterprises owned by women and youth are empowered with at least forty percent (40%) value of this project, whilst creating opportunities for innovative locally developed solutions to find traction in our market.

There have been significant investments in data centres and cloud services providers, which will contribute significantly to the economy by enabling efficient storage and dissemination of data, as well as access to digital solutions. The country has a total of 65 data centres, making us the leading African digital economy.

Next Generation Spectrum

In December 2023, Cabinet approved the publication of the final Next Generation Radio Frequency Spectrum Policy. The policy intends to support the spectrum allocation and licensing for fixed mobile; broadcasting; aeronautical and marine; research and development; community access, and other relevant industries.

The policy also seeks to promote equity and fair allocation to contribute towards the transformation of the sector and accessibility of digital connectivity even in outlying parts of the country.

The purpose of the policy is to address gaps and limitations that were identified in the 2016 *National Information and Communications Technology White Paper* and prepares for the amendment of relevant sections of the Electronic Communications Act of 2005, which include:

- unclear roles and responsibilities between Minister and ICASA which contributed to inefficiencies;
- gaps in the spectrum management regime;
- an exclusive spectrum regime that benefit a few and bigger player; and
- inefficiencies towards extending broadband access to rural, remote and underserved areas.

Broadcast Digital Migration (BDM)

During 2023, the DCDT was expected to migrate the remaining households to digital TV signal and complete the switch-off of analogue transmission. This will release valuable spectrum for the roll-out of 5G mobile networks and reduce the cost of data. At least five provinces – Free State, Northern Cape, North West, Limpopo and Mpumalanga – had successfully switched off and were receiving

TV broadcast on digital platform. In December 2022, it was proposed 31 March 2023 should be the date for the analogue switch off. As part of the BDM project, the remaining 151 transmitters in the Eastern Cape, Western Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and Gauteng were expected to be switched off in 2023.

Digitalisation of the State

Some government departments, including Home Affairs and the South African Police Service, are digitising their paper-based records into digital format. By mid-2023, there were 120 Batho Pele e-services on the e-government portal ranging from agro-processing, exam queries, licensing and permit platforms, and SARS e-filing. The DCDT, working in conjunction with SITA, was expected to prioritise the scaling up of e-services and ensuring their full use by citizens.

Entities:

Sentech

Sentech was established in terms of the Sentech Act of 1996 and it derives its mandate from the Electronic Communications Act of 2005. It is responsible for providing broadcasting signal distribution services to licensed TV and radio broadcasters.

In 2002, following the deregulation of the telecommunications sector, Sentech was licensed to provide international voice-based telecommunications and multimedia services. Over the medium-term period, the entity will focus on achieving the objectives of its public service mandate while ensuring its financial sustainability.

It aimed to continue operating an estimated 330 terrestrial distribution sites and satellite platforms to provide customers with content, multimedia and connectivity services. However, these operations will cease as all analogue transmitters are shut down in the migration to digital terrestrial TV, which were expected to be completed in 2023/24. The entity planned to ensure that it provides digital TV coverage to 99% of households each year over the medium term.

South African Broadcasting Corporation (SABC)

The SABC derives its mandate from the Broadcasting Act of 1999 and is mandated to provide broadcasting and information services through a wide range of programming that displays South African talent in educational and entertainment programmes; offer diverse views through a variety of news, information and analyses; advance national and public interests in general; and include national sports programming.

Over the medium-term period, the SABC planned to focus on implementing the growth phase of its turnaround plan, which involves initiatives to improve performance by offering new content on multiple platforms and optimising operations in an effort to generate revenue and ensure financial recovery.

Initiatives include a new streaming platform, which will include a variety of local and international content; revising content acquisition models for video

entertainment, which is expected to improve turnaround times for commissioning and broadcasting; increasing its share of the industry radio advertising revenue; and rolling out radio brand campaigns to improve the corporation's image.

South African Post Office (SAPO)

The South African Post Office is a government business enterprise established to provide postal and related services to the public. It derives its mandate from the Postal Services Act of 1998 and the SAPO SOC Ltd Act of 2011).

The Postal Services Act of 1998 makes provision for the regulation of postal services and the operational functions of the post office, including universal service obligations, and grants it an exclusive mandate to conduct postal services in the reserved sector for items such as letters, postcards and parcels weighing less than 1 kilogram.

Over the medium term, the post office aimed to focus on providing universal access to postal and related services, and implementing the Post Office of Tomorrow strategy to improve its financial position.

The strategy deals with improving the company's logistics business through partnering with various service and technology providers; modernising postal services through digital postal services and new payment channels; relaunching the post office trust centre; providing government authentication services such as secure digital certificates, secure digital signature apps, and a digital commissioner of oaths; establishing digital business hubs; and modernising the post office through new equipment, processes and capabilities. These interventions are expected to increase revenue while reducing costs due to improved efficiencies.

The SAPOI was expected to continue pursuing potential revenue-generating opportunities in the government, courier and financial services sectors over the period ahead as it seeks to improve its financial position.

State Information Technology Agency

The SITA was established through the SITA Act of 1998. The agency is mandated to provide IT, information systems and related services to and on behalf of government departments and organs of state. This includes the provision and maintenance of transversal information and data processing systems and their associated services, the maintenance of secure information systems, and the execution of its functions according to approved policies and standards.

Over the medium term, the agency planned to focus on strategic projects such as South Africa Connect, cloud infrastructure investments and the Gauteng broadband network; and the implementation of its financial sustainability plan to ensure its viability.

This will entail, among other things, negotiating partnerships with industry and local research institutions, and reviewing and modernising costing and recovery models. These interventions are expected to enable the agency to fund its infrastructure requirements more efficiently to better serve its customers.

Broadband Infraco

BBI's legislative mandate, as set out in the BBI Act of 2007, is to provide ICT infrastructure and broadband capacity in South Africa. Its main objectives are to expand the availability and affordability of access to electronic communications, including but not limited to underdeveloped and underserved areas; ensure that the bandwidth requirements for specific projects of national interests are met; and enable the State to provide affordable access to electronic communications networks and services.

Over the medium term, the entity aimed to focus on implementing phase two of the South Africa Connect project, and maintaining broadband connectivity to 713 government sites and the time taken to restore faults on the core network at seven hours.

Film and Publication Board

The FPB was established in terms of the Films and Publications Act of 1996, as amended. Its mandate is to regulate the creation, production, possession and distribution of certain publications and films by classifying them; imposing age restrictions on content; and rendering the exploitative use of children in pornographic publications, films or online material punishable.

The FPB is also mandated to issue, renew and revoke licences; impose fines and make recommendations for criminal prosecution to the National Director of Public Prosecutions; search and inspect premises; and take down illegal online activities.

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa

The ICASA was established by the ICASA Act of 2000 to regulate the South African communications, broadcasting and postal services sectors. The authority is a chapter 9 institution in terms of the Constitution.

It derives its mandate from the Electronic Communications Act of 2005 to license and regulate electronic communications and broadcasting services, and the Postal Services Act of 1998 to license and regulate the postal services sector.

The authority is empowered to monitor licensee compliance with licence terms and conditions, develop regulations, plan and manage the radio frequency spectrum, and protect consumers in relation to these services.

Over the medium term, the ICASA aimed to impose universal service obligations on mobile network operators as part of licensing the high-demand spectrum.

As part of its ongoing regulatory activities, it plans to issue 42 community TV licences over the medium term and monitor 255 broadcasting licences.

In its efforts to protect consumers against unfair practices by service providers over the period ahead, the authority plans to develop six tariff analysis reports and resolve an average of 89% of consumer complaints.

National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa (NEMISA)

NEMISA was established as a non-profit institution for education. Its programmes were initially structured to enhance the market readiness of students in broadcasting, but its mandate has been expanded to include the development of e-skills capacity in South Africa and the implementation of e-skills programmes in collaboration with its partners.

Over the medium term, the institute aimed to provide digital skills in collaboration with government, education, business and civil society. The institute aims to train 9 900 citizens in digital technologies, 650 citizens in ICT skills-based programmes and 440 000 citizens in digital literacy.

Universal Service and Access Agency of South Africa

The USAASA was established in terms of Section 80 of the Electronic Communications Act of 2005. Its sole mandate is to promote universal service and access to electronic communications and broadcasting services. The agency is set to be disestablished by the end of 2023/24 as part of recommendations emanating from the 2016 *National Integrated ICT Policy White Paper*.

The disestablishment is intended to streamline roles and responsibilities of different entities and increase efficiency to support universal service and access. The legislative process to complete this is expected to conclude by 2025/26. The agency will, however, continue to manage the Universal Service and Access Fund until it is disestablished to ensure that disbursed funds reach the intended deserving beneficiaries.

Communication platforms

Radio

The SABC's national radio network of 19 radio stations reach over 28 million South Africans.

Commercial radio stations

Commercial radio stations in South Africa include:

- Algoa FM
- Classic FM
- YFM 99.2
- Kaya FM
- 947 (previously 947 Highveld Stereo)
- 702
- Metro FM
- 5FM
- Good Hope FM
- Jacaranda FM
- OFM
- East Coast Radio
- Cape Talk 567

- Radio 2000
- Capricorn FM
- Power FM
- Radio KFM
- Tru FM
- Thobela FM
- Ukhozi FM
- Umhlobo Wenene FM
- Ukhozi FM
- Munghana Lonene FM
- Lesedi FM
- Motswedding FM
- Radiokansel/Radio Pulpit
- Phalaphala FM
- Ikwekwezi FM
- Ligwalagwala FM
- Lotus FM
- Gagasi FM

Community radio

In terms of Section 7 of the Electronic Communications Act of 2005, it is unlawful to provide or operate a broadcasting service without a licence. There are more than 165 licensed community stations in South Africa, which broadcast in a number of languages.

Television

SABC News offers breaking news and continuous news updates in 51 African countries. SABC1, SABC2 and SABC3 attract on average 28 million South African viewers a month, as they deliver top quality local and international content. SABC Encore, a retro channel which showcases programming from the 1980s, is an integral part of the SABC's strategy moving into a multichannel environment.

According to Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) Census of 2022, just under four-fifths (79%) of households owned TVs compared to the 52,6% in 2001. Over four-fifths of households in the Western Cape (83,8%), Gauteng (81,1%) and the Free State (81%) owned a TV compared to 30,2% in the Northern Cape.

Community TV

There are at least 12 community TV stations operational in different parts of South Africa, including Soweto TV; GauTV; 1KZN; Cape Town TV; Tshwane TV; Mpuma Kapa TV and Onse TV.

Free-to-Air (FTA) TV

e.tv is South Africa's first private and largest English-medium channel. The channel also has a pan-African presence through e.tv Africa, which is distributed

on the DStv Africa bouquet and by local affiliates in African countries. Other FTA channels include eMovies; eMovies Extra; eExtra; eReality; ePlesier; eToonz; eSERIES.

Satellite broadcasting

eNews Channel Africa (eNCA) is South Africa's first and most watched independent 24-hour TV news channel on the DStv platform (Channel 403). eNCA's digital division provides an audience of 1.5 million monthly users with an immersive experience, combining the power of text, image and video with the accessibility and portability of online news.

Internet

According to Stats SA's Census 2022, generally, there has been upward trend in access to internet services over the period 2011–2022. This is attributed to rapid advancement in communication services, such as cellphone ownership.

Overall, households with no access to internet decreased threefold (from 64,8% in 2011 to 21,1% in 2022). A substantial percentage of households reported accessing internet mainly through a cellphone or other mobile device (60,5%) compared to 16,3% recorded in 2011.

There was an increase in the percentage of households accessing internet mainly at home, from 8,6% in 2011 to 13,3% in 2022. It is also noted that households accessing internet mainly using other methods decreased significantly. Households accessing internet mainly at work decreased by four percentage points (from 4,7% in 2011 to 0,3% in 2022).

About one-third (34,3%) of households in the Eastern Cape and 31,9% in Limpopo reported to have no access to the internet in 2022 compared to Gauteng, where only 13,6% had no internet access.

Households that did not have access to the internet decreased significantly between 2011 and 2022 in all provinces, with only 21,1% of households reporting that they had no access to the internet compared to 64,8% in 2011. Internet access via cellphone was the most common source of internet for most households.

Social media

South Africa has 43.5 million internet users, of these, 35.15 million are social media users. According to World Wide Worx, South Africa's leading independent technology research and strategy organisation, with a focus on technology in business strategy, the country's social media landscape continues to be dominated by Facebook (56,7%).

TikTok (30,6%) has experienced tremendous growth and has replaced Instagram in the second position. Slightly behind TikTok, Instagram remains relatively high (27,6%). X, formerly Twitter (22,5%), still has a significant following despite the fall-out of Elon Musk's takeover. LinkedIn (14,7%) places fifth with a

strong presence, given the fact that it is a network for professional contact and communication.

Telecommunications

South Africa has four major mobile operators, namely Cell C, MTN, Vodacom and Telkom Mobile.

According to Stats SA's Census 2022, the ownership of cellphones was universal in most provinces, with the exception of Eastern Cape (87,9%) and Northern Cape (85,4%), according to Stats SA's Census 2022.

Ownership of cellphones at household level is universal. The overwhelming majority (92,1%) of households in the country owned a cellphone in working order, a notable increase from the 32,3% in 2001. Conversely, a landline telephone has become the least owned good. There is a downward trend in households that owned a landline telephone over the period 2001 to 2022.

The media

South Africa has a vibrant and independent media, with print, broadcast and online offerings.

Print

Newspapers

Most South African newspapers and magazines are organised into several major publishing houses. These include Media24 (part of Naspers), Independent Media, Caxton Publishers & Printers and Tiso Blackstar Group. Other important media players include M&G Media; the Natal Witness Printing & Publishing Company; Primedia Publishing; Highbury Media and Kagiso Media.

Magazines

According to figures released by the Audit Bureau of Circulations of South Africa, there has been a steady decline in magazine circulation in South Africa, with only a handful of commercial magazines achieving a steady increase in circulation.

Media organisations and role players

The **Publishers Support Services (PSS)** is an umbrella body incorporating print and digital media. It is a natural progression from the long-established Print Media South Africa and illustrates its commitment as an interactive organisation to keeping pace with the fast-changing media world of the 21st Century.

An evolving and vibrant association, its express purpose is to represent and promote all aspects concerning the industry and its members. PSS is a non-profit, voluntary association. Its membership includes more than 500 newspapers and magazine titles that cater for four different language groups.

The **South African National Editors' Forum** promotes excellence in journalism through fighting for media freedom, writing policy submissions, research, education and training programmes.

The **Forum of Journalists for Transformation** addresses issues that directly affect its members.

The **Press Council**, the **Press Ombud** and the **Appeals Panel** are independent co-regulatory mechanisms set up by the print and online media to provide impartial, expeditious and cost-effective adjudication to settle disputes between newspapers, magazines and online publications, on the one hand, and members of the public, on the other, over the editorial content of publications.

The **Freedom of Expression Institute (FXI)** was formed to defend freedom of expression, to oppose censorship, to promote access to information and knowledge, and to promote media diversity. The FXI is the leading organisation on issues of freedom of expression and access to information as enshrined in the Bill of Rights in Section 16 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996.

The **Forum of Community Journalists (FCJ)** is an independent, non-profit, non-racial and voluntary organisation striving to promote and express the interests of all journalists employed on a permanent or freelance basis at regional community newspapers, magazines and online community publications in South Africa.

The **Broadcasting Complaints Commission of South Africa (BCCSA)** serves as a voluntary watchdog to adjudicate complaints from the public about programmes flighted by members who subscribe to its code of conduct.

The **National Association of Broadcasters (NAB)** was established in 1993 as a membership-based voluntary association to foster and promote the development of a sustainable and robust broadcasting system in South Africa. It is the only industry association in the country that represents all three tiers of the regulated broadcasting industry.

Its members include the public broadcaster (SABC), commercial broadcasters (Multichoice, e.tv, StarSat, Primedia, Kagiso Media, AME, amongst others) and community broadcasters (Bush Radio, Jozi FM, Radio Pulpit, Voice of Wits, Radio Tygerberg, Tshwane FM and others). The NAB's mission is to engage with policymakers and regulators to advocate for a level playing field and an industry that is grounded in the principles of democracy, diversity and freedom of expression.

The NAB established the BCCSA that has been recognised by the ICASA since 1995. The commercial members of the NAB are funders of the Media Development and Diversity Agency and the NAB collaborates with NEMISA on training for the sector.

Media Monitoring Africa is a non-profit organisation that acts in a watchdog role to promote ethical and fair journalism that supports human rights.

The **National Community Radio Forum** lobbies for the airwaves in South Africa to be diversified, and for a dynamic broadcasting environment through the establishment of community radio stations. Other press organisations operating in the country are the Foreign Correspondents' Association of Southern Africa; Printing Industries Federation of South Africa; South African Typographical

Union; Specialist Press Association; South African Guild of Motoring Journalists; Professional Photographers of South Africa; Media Institute of Southern Africa; Publishers' Association of South Africa, and various press clubs in major centres.

News agencies

Local and international news agencies based in South Africa include:

- African News Agency
- Reuters
- Agence France-Presse
- Associated Press
- Deutsche Presse Agentur
- United Press International.

Media awards

Some of South Africa's media awards include the:

- Vodacom Journalist of the Year Awards
- South African Breweries (SAB) Environmental Media and Environmentalist of the Year Awards
- Sanlam Group Awards for Excellence in Financial Journalism
- CNN MultiChoice African Journalist Awards
- Discovery Health Journalism Awards
- Nat Nakasa Awards
- FCJ Excellence Awards
- Isu Elihle Awards
- Sikuvile Journalism Awards
- South African Social Media Awards
- SADC Media Awards
- New Generation (Social & Digital Media) Awards.

Marketing and advertising awards

South Africa has a vibrant and dynamic marketing and advertising industry. Some of the awards include: Loeries; Assegai Awards; Creative Circle Annual Awards; Effie Awards; FM AdFocus Awards and Marketing Achievement Awards.



ECONOMY AND FINANCE

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
SOUTH AFRICA

2022/23

Economy and Finance

NATIONAL TREASURY

National Treasury's legislative mandate is based on Section 216(1) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, which calls for the establishment of a national treasury to ensure transparency, accountability and sound financial controls in the management of the country's public finances.

This role is further elaborated in the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA) of 1999. The department is mandated to:

- promote national government's fiscal policy and the coordination of macroeconomic policy;
- ensure the stability and soundness of the financial system and financial services;
- coordinate intergovernmental financial and fiscal relations;
- manage the budget preparation process; and
- enforce transparency and effective management of national revenue and expenditure, assets and liabilities, public entities, and constitutional institutions.

Over the medium term, National Treasury aimed to focus on reviewing tax policy; supporting sustainable employment; supporting infrastructure development and economically integrated cities and communities; managing future spending growth, fiscal risk and government's assets and liabilities; streamlining government procurement; strengthening financial management in government; and facilitating regional and international cooperation.

By mid-2023, inflation, globally, had remained stubbornly high pushing up the cost-of-living for households and government's borrowing costs. The International Monetary Fund's global outlook corroborated that the world was "entering a perilous phase during which economic growth remains low by historical standards and financial risks have risen, yet inflation has not yet decisively turned the corner."

Secondly, the persistence and severity of load-shedding domestically remains a binding constraint to production, investment and employment. As such, real gross domestic product (GDP) growth in the final quarter of 2022 was worse than anticipated, contracting by 1.3%. The result is that GDP growth in 2022 was weaker than expected, at 2%.

Supporting sustainable employment

The Jobs Fund offers matched funding grants across four funding windows – enterprise development, work opportunities through infrastructure development, support for work seekers and institutional capacity building. Grant funding is made available through a competitive process to initiatives that innovatively solve employment challenges and have the potential to be scaled up.

By mid-2023, the fund's portfolio of projects were valued at an estimated R9 billion. Since the Jobs Fund's inception in 2011, project partners in the private

sector, as well as non- governmental organisations, have committed R13.5 billion in matched funding. As at 31 December 2022, the fund had disbursed R6.4 billion and leveraged an additional R12.7 billion from project partners.

The fund was allocated R1.4 billion over the medium term in the Government Technical Advisory Centre subprogramme in the Public Finance and Budget Management programme.

Supporting infrastructure development and economically integrated cities and communities

The department continues to facilitate conditional grants and provide financial incentives for infrastructure planning and development to municipalities. This is through the local government financial management grant, aimed at promoting and supporting financial management reform and building capacity in municipalities; the neighbourhood development partnership grant, aimed at developing and implementing urban network plans; the project preparation support grant, aimed at and supporting metropolitan municipalities in developing a pipeline of investment-ready capital programmes and projects; and the infrastructure skills development grant, aimed at increasing the pool of professional engineers, planners and other built environment professionals in local government.

Managing future spending growth, fiscal risk and government's assets and liabilities

Over the next three years, the department planned to continue coordinating the national budgeting process and oversee expenditure planning in the Programme Management for Public Finance and Budget Management, Public Finance and Budget Office and Coordination subprogrammes.

The department was also expected to continue promoting and enforcing prudent financial management of state-owned entities through financial analysis and oversight. To this end, over the medium-term period, the department will review all corporate plans, annual reports and guarantee applications received from schedule 2 and 3B public entities.

Streamlining government procurement

The Office the Chief Procurement Officer planned to ensure that the Public Procurement Bill is passed through Parliament in 2023/24. The Bill is aimed at ensuring that the State uses and leverages procurement to advance economic opportunities for historically disadvantaged people, women, young people, people with disabilities and small businesses; and promote local production.

Preferential procurement regulations that provide for categories of preference in the awarding of bids in government were approved in January 2023 and will be implemented over the medium-term period. As such, over the next three years, the department planned to support the implementation of regulations across government.

Strengthening financial management in government

Government's integrated financial management system is designed to enhance the effectiveness of back-end public service functions by improving access to information and the quality of data, eliminating the duplication of systems and resources, and limiting the use of manual processes.

Over the medium-term period, the department planned to continue developing the system. Preliminary work for the implementation of some of its modules, such as eRecruitment, a centralised public service recruitment system and the establishment of a centre of excellence, which will provide technical support to users, commenced in 2022.

Facilitating international and regional cooperation

National Treasury planned to continue advancing South Africa's interests through representation in international and regional financial institutions, as well as managing bilateral and multilateral relationships through regional engagements.

The department also facilitates regional cooperation within the Common Monetary Area.

The department's key regional engagements over the next three years include providing technical support to regional capacity building institutions such as the Collaborative Africa Budget Reform Initiative, the International Finance Facility for Immunisation, the Commonwealth Fund for Technical Cooperation, the African Institute for Economic Development and Planning, and the International Monetary Fund's Regional Technical Assistance Centre for Southern Africa.

Entities under National Treasury

- The **Development Bank of Southern Africa** (DBSA) was reconstituted in terms of the DBSA Act of 1997 as a development finance institution with the primary purpose of promoting economic development and growth. The DBSA also promotes the development of human resources and institutional capacity by mobilising financial and other resources from national and international private and public sector partners for sustainable development projects and programmes in South Africa and other Southern African countries.

Over the medium term, the bank aims to create a sustainable infrastructure development ecosystem while accelerating and scaling up its development and implementation of catalytic infrastructure, which will entail driving investments in sectors such as energy, transport and logistics, water and sanitation, ICT, health, human settlements and education.

- The **Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa** is a development finance institution and its mandate is to address agricultural and rural development. The bank operates in the primary agriculture and agribusiness sectors, and is regulated by the Land and Agricultural Development Bank Act of 2002 and the PFMA of 1999.

The bank was expected to play a pivotal role in advancing agriculture and rural development. Due to liquidity constraints, over the medium-term period, the bank aimed to reduce the size of its loan book, funding liabilities and the ratio of non-performing loans to total gross loans. It also planned to increase its development loan book over the medium term to become a predominant portfolio.

- The **South African Revenue Service (SARS)** is, in terms of the SARS Act of 1997, mandated to collect all revenue due to the State and administer trade to support government in meeting its key developmental objectives for growth. This involves facilitating legitimate trade, protecting South Africa's ports of entry, and eliminating illegal trade and tax evasion.

As its principal contribution to South Africa's economic and social development, the revenue service's focus over the medium term will continue to be on providing government with more than 90% of the revenue it requires to meet its policy and delivery priorities by collecting all of the revenue target set by the Minister of Finance. As the achievement of this goal is contingent on how easy it is for taxpayers and traders to comply with their tax obligations, by 2025/26, the entity plans to ensure that 85% of taxpayers and traders are satisfied with the clarity of guidance it provides, and to conduct auto-assessments on 95% of standard taxpayers.

It aims to do this effectively through modernising its ICT systems to encourage eFiling, improve the experience of taxpayers, monitor compliance and make tax collection more efficient, develop and administer a tax and customs system of voluntary compliance, and, where appropriate, enforce tax directives responsibly and decisively. The entity plans to collaborate with law enforcement agencies such as the South African Police Service (SAPS), the National Prosecuting Authority, the Financial Intelligence Centre (FIC) and the Special Investigating Unit to enforce tax compliance by taxpayers and traders, and address illicit financial flows.

The entity has established a syndicated tax and customs crime division responsible for investigating criminal and illicit organised crime and syndicated evasion schemes across all taxes. The division is mandated to investigate suspected tax-related crimes specifically identified by the state capture commission reports, and to support the entity's investigating directorate in cases relating to other unlawful activities where tax fraud or evasion are implied, given the strong link between tax crimes and other financial crimes such as money laundering and illicit financial flows.

- The **Accounting Standards Board** was established to develop uniform standards of generally recognised accounting practice for all spheres of

government in terms of Section 216(1)(a) of the Constitution and the PFMA of 1999. The board also promotes transparency and the effective management of the revenue, expenditure, assets and liabilities of the entities to which the standards apply.

In line with its mandate, the board will implement its Taking Stock programme, which involves a mix of projects to ensure that stakeholders are not overburdened with too many new or revised reporting requirements. Over the next three years, a major focus of the board will be on developing and implementing standards of generally recognised accounting practices using the information contained in the annual financial statements of its stakeholders, and ensuring these are in line with best practice.

- The **Cooperative Banks Development Agency** was established in terms of the Cooperative Banks Act of 2007. The agency is mandated to facilitate, support and develop cooperative banking with the strategic focus of driving growth and sustainability in the cooperative banking sector, and contributing to a transformed financial services sector in terms of ownership and meaningful participation in the mainstream banking sector.

The agency also promotes access to finance for SMMEs and the financial inclusion of underserved communities through the provision of retail banking services. Over the medium term, the agency aimed to focus on expanding the footprint of sustainable, professionalised, modernised and technology-enabled cooperative banking institutions, thereby increasing the sector's membership base, member deposits and assets.

This plan includes collaboration and partnerships with stakeholders to assist in developing institutions, strengthening organisations, enhancing operational efficiency through innovative technology interventions and solutions, and expanding the footprint of sustainable cooperative banking institutions through a holistic support programme.

The agency will also work towards merging with the Small Enterprise Development Agency (SEDA) and the Small Enterprise Finance Agency over the medium-term period. The aim of the merger is to address the fragmentation and poor coordination of support provided to SMMEs and cooperatives at the local and provincial levels of government.

- The **Financial and Fiscal Commission** (FFC) derives its mandate from the FFC Act of 1997, which requires the commission to advise relevant authorities on financial and fiscal requirements for national, provincial and local spheres of government in terms of Section 220 of the Constitution.

Other legislation that informs the commission's mandate includes

the Borrowing Powers of Provincial Governments Act of 1996, the Intergovernmental Fiscal Relations Act of 1997, the Provincial Tax Regulation Process Act of 2001, the Municipal Finance Management Act of 2003, the Municipal Systems Amendment Act of 2003, the Municipal Fiscal Powers and Functions Act of 2007, and the Money Bills Amendment Procedure and Related Matters Act of 2009.

Over the medium term, the commission aimed to focus on providing stakeholders, including Parliament, with recommendations to improve the credibility of the South African fiscal framework and the effectiveness of public spending. The commission's contribution will include other policy research papers and briefings on a wide range of fiscal and financial topics. It will also focus on its organisational redesign and the relocation of its Johannesburg office to its office in Cape Town.

- The **Financial Intelligence Centre** was established by the FIC Act (FICA) of 2001 to combat money laundering activities and the financing of terrorist and related activities, identify the proceeds of unlawful activities, exchange information with law enforcement and other local and international agencies, supervise and enforce compliance with the FICA of 2001, and facilitate effective supervision and enforcement by supervisory bodies in terms of the Act.

To deliver on this mandate and protect the integrity of South Africa's financial system, the act works in conjunction with other legislation, which includes the Prevention of Organised Crime Act of 1998, the Protection of Constitutional Democracy Against Terrorist and Related Activities Act of 2004, and the SAPS Act of 1995. To address concerns identified in the Financial Action Task Force action plan, as well as in response to the recommendations from the state capture commission, over the medium term, the centre will focus on augmenting its human resource capacity, and enhancing and maintaining its ICT network and systems.

This was expected to enable it to improve its oversight responsibility and combating of financial crimes and terror financing by enhancing analytical software to reinforce the integrity of South Africa's financial system and improving access to information for clients.

- The **Financial Sector Conduct Authority** was established in 2018 by the Financial Sector Regulation Act of 2017 as one of the two pillars of the Twin Peaks model for regulating the financial sector. As such, the authority assumes the role of the market conduct regulator of financial institutions that provide financial products and services, and financial institutions licensed in terms of financial sector legislation.

The authority assumed the business operations of the Financial Services Board in 2018/19.

The authority's ongoing objective is to play a meaningful role in promoting growth and employment, and reducing poverty through regulating the financial services sector and protecting consumers, and promoting an integrated approach to financial inclusion and employment. Over the medium term, the authority planned to focus on implementing its revised strategy, which is aimed at enabling it to be more responsive and forward-looking, and includes an expanded mandate to supervise banks.

These objectives are intended to improve industry practices to achieve fair outcomes for financial customers; act against misconduct to support confidence and integrity in the financial sector; promote the development of an innovative, inclusive and sustainable financial sector; empower households and small businesses to be financially resilient; and accelerate the transformation of the authority into a socially responsible, efficient and responsive conduct regulator.

This will be done by conducting environmental assessments to identify and understand trends; attracting specialist expertise to deal with emerging issues such as climate change; and proactively monitoring pricing and selling practices, new business models and financial products.

- The **Government Pensions Administration Agency** provides pension administration services to the Government Employees Pension Fund in terms of the Government Employees Pension Law of 1996 and the Associated Institutions Pension Fund Act of 1963.

Post-retirement medical subsidies are administered as provided for and regulated by resolutions of the Public Service Coordinating Bargaining Council, military pensions are administered in terms of the Military Pensions Act of 1976, injury-on-duty payments are administered in terms of the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act of 1993, and special pensions are administered in terms of the Special Pensions Act of 1996.

The agency aimed to optimise its performance over the medium term through its modernisation programme. This entailed procuring new pension administration, client relationship management and financial management solutions. These interventions were expected to lead to a reduction in turnaround times for processing and paying benefits from 45 days to less than 25 days, improve the management and accuracy of client data, and enable the agency to reach 65% of clients through digital platforms.

- The **Government Technical Advisory Centre** was established in terms of the Public Service Act of 1994 and is mandated to assist organs of state in building their capacity for efficient, effective and transparent financial management. The centre's overarching objectives are to render consulting services to government departments and other organs of state, provide specialised procurement support for high-impact government initiatives, render advice on the feasibility of infrastructure projects, and provide knowledge management and ancillary support for projects.

Over the medium term, the entity planned to focus on assisting organs of state to build their capacity for efficient public financial management, and work towards a revised funding model that will allow it to be more financially sustainable. To achieve this, it plans to strengthen partnerships between government, the private sector and civil society by convening spaces for policy formulation, service delivery and accountability; become a thought leader on impediments to the effective functioning of government; and provide fast-tracked, flexible and specialised expertise within the remit of the PFMA of 1999.

- The **Independent Regulatory Board for Auditors** was established in terms of the Auditing Profession Act (2005) and became operational in April 2006. The board is mandated to: protect the public by regulating audits performed by registered auditors; improve the development and maintenance of internationally comparable ethical and auditing standards for auditors that promote investment and, as a consequence, employment in South Africa; set out measures to advance the implementation of appropriate standards of competence and good ethics in the auditing profession; and provide for procedures for disciplinary action in instances of improper conduct.

Over the medium term, the board planned to focus on ensuring that it is sustainable and relevant; ensuring the quality of industry audits; facilitating comprehensive stakeholder engagements; and conducting disciplinary hearings and investigations, which will require the appointment of consultants.

- The **Office of the Ombud for Financial Services Providers** was established in terms of the Financial Advisory and Intermediary Services Act of 2002, which gives the ombud statutory powers to consider and dispose of complaints against financial services providers, primarily intermediaries selling investment products.

The ombud aimed to focus on the needs and requirements of its stakeholders over the medium term by ensuring that cases are properly assessed and appropriately handled until finalisation, informing stakeholders on the role and functions of the ombud, acquiring and retaining appropriate skills to fulfil

its mandate, ensuring that risk is adequately managed across the enterprise, and ensuring that appeals or reviews of its decisions are appropriately dealt with.

- The **Office of the Pension Funds Adjudicator** is mandated to investigate and determine complaints lodged in terms of the Pension Funds Act of 1956. The office's mandate became effective in January 1998. The adjudicator is required to ensure the procedurally fair, economical and expeditious resolution of complaints in terms of the Act by ensuring that its services are accessible to all; investigating complaints in a procedurally fair manner; justly and expeditiously resolving complaints in accordance with the law; incorporating innovation and proactive thought and action in its activities; and providing opportunities for individual growth.

The adjudicator has jurisdiction only over funds that are registered under the Pension Funds Act of 1956. Over the medium-term period, the adjudicator plans to develop the capability of its staff, restructure internal processes and continue to modernise its ICT systems in an effort to resolve 85% of pension fund complaints within six months. It will also aim to intensify its engagements with relevant stakeholders such as regulators and pension funds, and continue to conduct outreach programmes to create awareness about its existence and mandate.

- The **Public Investment Corporation (PIC)** was established by the PIC Act of 2004 as a registered financial services provider wholly owned by government, with the Minister of Finance as its shareholder representative. The corporation is mandated to invest funds on behalf of its clients, as agreed upon with each client and approved by the Financial Sector Conduct Authority.

The corporation's clients are public sector entities, most of which are pension, provident, social security, development and guardian funds. Over the medium term, the corporation planned to focus on implementing client mandates through its highly skilled investment team, maintaining a robust communication technology platform, applying risk management practices, and ensuring that its investment decisions are based on sound principles.

- The **South African Special Risks Insurance Association (SASRIA)** was established in 1979 and registered in terms of Section 21 of the Companies Act of 1973. In line with the amendments of the SASRIA Act of 1998 and the Companies Act of 2008, government became the company's sole shareholder. The association is mandated to support the insurance industry by providing cover for special risks such as riots, strikes, political unrest, terrorist attacks, civil commotion, public disorder and labour disturbances.

Over the medium term, the insurer aimed to rebuild its capital base through passing on higher premiums to the industry; revising its reinsurance structure, which requires 40% of its insurance business to be ceded in 2023/24 and 2024/25 to reinsurers with catastrophe cover of R10 billion; and taking account of equity contributions to settle all valid claims related to the civil unrest in KwaZulu-Natal and Gauteng in July 2021.

South African Reserve Bank (SARB)

The primary mandate of the SARB is to protect the value of the currency in the interest of balanced and sustainable economic growth. In addition to this, the SARB has a statutory mandate to enhance and protect financial stability in South Africa. The SARB is also responsible for:

- issuing and destroying banknotes and coins;
- regulating and supervising financial institutions;
- managing the official gold and foreign reserves of the country;
- managing the national payments system;
- administering the country's remaining exchange rate control systems;
- acting as the banker to government; and
- acting as lender of last resort to provide liquidity assistance in exceptional cases.

The independence and autonomy of the SARB are entrenched in the Constitution. The SARB has the independence to use any of the monetary policy instruments at its disposal to achieve its monetary policy goal. However, the selection of a monetary policy goal is the responsibility of government.

The Governor of the SARB holds regular discussions with the Minister of Finance and meets periodically with members of the Parliamentary Portfolio and Select Committees on Finance.

In terms of Section 32 of the SARB Act of 1989, the Bank publishes a monthly statement of its assets and liabilities and submits its annual report to Parliament. The Bank is therefore ultimately accountable to Parliament.

Tax administration

National Treasury is responsible for advising the Minister of Finance on tax policy issues. As part of this role, National Treasury must design tax instruments that can optimally fulfil a revenue-raising function. These tax instruments must be aligned to the goals of government's economic and social policy.

These instruments are then administered by SARS. A single, modern framework for the common administrative provisions of various tax Acts administered by SARS, excluding Customs, was established by the Tax Administration Act of 2011, which commenced on 1 October 2012. The Act simplifies and provides greater coherence in South African tax administration law.

It eliminates duplication, removes redundant requirements, and aligns disparate requirements that previously existed in different tax Acts administered by SARS. The Act provides for common procedures across the various tax Acts, and strives

for an appropriate balance between the rights and obligations of SARS and the rights and obligations of taxpayers in a transparent relationship.

The Office of the Tax Ombud is intended to provide taxpayers with an impartial and low-cost mechanism to address service, procedural or administrative difficulties that taxpayers have not been able to resolve through SARS's complaints management channels.

South African tax system

South Africa has a residence-based income tax system. Residents are, subject to certain exclusions, taxed on their worldwide income, irrespective of where their income was earned. Non-residents are taxed on their income from a South African source, subject to relief under Double Taxation Agreements. Foreign taxes are credited against South African tax payable on foreign income.

Personal Income Tax

PIT is one of government's main sources of income. Income tax is levied on residents' worldwide income, with appropriate relief to avoid double taxation. Non-residents are taxed on their income from a South African source. Tax is levied on taxable income that, in essence, consists of gross income less exemptions and allowable deductions. (Taxable capital gains also form part of taxable income).

Individuals generally receive most of their income as salary/wages, pension/retirement payments and investment income (interest and dividends). Some individuals may also have business income which is taxable as personal income (for example, sole proprietors and partners).

Corporate Income Tax (CIT)

CIT is a tax imposed on companies resident in South Africa, which are incorporated under the laws of, or which are effectively managed in, the country, and which derive income from within or outside the country. Non-resident companies which operate through a branch or which have a permanent establishment within South Africa are subject to tax on all income from a source within the country.

Dividends Tax (DT)

DT is a tax on shareholders (beneficial owners) when dividends are paid to them, and, under normal circumstances, is withheld from their dividend payment by a withholding agent (either the company paying the dividend or, where a regulated intermediary is involved, by the latter).

A dividend is in essence any payment by a company to a shareholder in respect of a share held in that company, excluding the return of contributed tax capital (i.e. consideration received by a company for the issue of shares). It is triggered by the payment of a dividend by any South African tax resident company or foreign company whose shares are listed on a South African Exchange.

Air Passenger Tax (APT)

In 2000 the Minister of Finance announced that an APT was to be instituted on chargeable passengers on a chargeable aircraft departing from an airport in South Africa to a destination outside the country. This is also applicable to charter companies.

The tax is not applicable to domestic flights. It is only applicable to chargeable passengers leaving on an international flight. Operators (airline), registered agents (those acting on behalf of an operator) or charter companies will be liable for the payment of the APT to SARS monthly after reconciliation of the passenger manifests. Non carrying passenger airlines (cargo) are required to register for APT purposes but are not liable for APT payments.

Capital Gains Tax (CGT)

CGT is not a separate tax but forms part of income tax. A capital gain arises when you dispose of an asset on or after 1 October 2001 for proceeds that exceed its base cost.

The relevant legislation is contained in the Eighth Schedule to the Income Tax of 1962. Capital gains are taxed at a lower effective tax rate than ordinary income. Pre-1 October 2001 CGT capital gains and losses are not taken into account. Not all assets attract CGT and certain capital gains and losses are disregarded.

A withholding tax applies to non-resident sellers of immovable property (Section 35A). The amount withheld by the buyer serves as an advance payment towards the seller's final income tax liability. CGT applies to individuals, trusts and companies. A resident, as defined in the Income Tax Act 58 of 1962, is liable for CGT on assets located both in and outside South Africa. A non-resident is liable to CGT only on immovable property in South Africa or assets of a "permanent establishment" (branch) in the country.

Certain indirect interests in immovable property such as shares in a property company are deemed to be immovable property. Some persons such as retirement funds are fully exempt from CGT. Public benefit organisations (PBOs) may be fully or partially exempt.

Diamond Export Levy

The Diamond Export Levy on unpolished diamonds exported from South Africa was introduced on 1 November 2008. SARS is mandated to administer and collect this levy in terms of the Diamond Export Levy Act of 2007. All producers, dealers, beneficiators and holders of permits must pay this levy when exporting such diamonds. The aim of the Diamond Export Levy is, among others, to promote the development of the local economy by encouraging the local diamond industry to process diamonds locally, develop skills and create employment.

Skills Development Levy (SDL)

The SDL is a levy imposed to encourage learning and development in South Africa and is determined by an employer's salary bill. The funds are to be used to

develop and improve skills of employees. Employers paying annual remuneration of less than R500 000 are exempt from the payment of this levy.

The following employers are exempt from paying SDL:

- Any public service employer in the national or provincial sphere of government. (These employers must budget for an amount equal to the levies due for training and education of their employees).
- Any national or provincial public entity, if 80% or more of its expenditure is paid directly or indirectly from funds voted by Parliament. (These employers must budget for an amount equal to the due for training and education of their employees).
- Any PBO, exempt from paying Income Tax in terms of Section 10(1) (cN) of the Income Tax Act of 1962, which only carries on certain educational, welfare, humanitarian, healthcare, religion, belief or philosophy public benefit activities or only provides funds to these PBOs and to whom a letter of exemption has been issued by the Tax Exemption Unit.
- Any municipality to which a certificate of exemption is issued by the Minister of Higher Education and Training.
- Any employer whose total remuneration subject to SDL (leviable amount) paid/ due to all its employees over the next 12 month period won't exceed R500 000. If this is the reason for exemption, these types of employers are not required to register to pay SDL.

Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF)

The UIF gives short-term relief to workers when they become unemployed or are unable to work because of maternity, adoption and parental leave or illness. It also provides relief to the dependants of a deceased contributor.

All employees, as well as their employers, are responsible for contributions to the UIF. However, an employee is excluded from contributing to the UIF if he or she is:

- employed by the employer for less than 24 hours a month;
- employed as an officer or employee in the national or provincial sphere of government; the President, Deputy President, a Minister, Deputy Minister, a member of the National Assembly, a permanent delegate to the National Council of Provinces, a Premier, a member of an Executive Council or a member of a provincial legislature; or
- a member of a municipal council, a traditional leader, a member of a provincial House of Traditional Leaders and a member of the Council of Traditional Leaders.

Donations tax

A donation is any gratuitous (free or at no charge) disposal of property including any gratuitous waiver or renunciation of a right. If the person (donee) receiving the donation gives anything in return, it is not a donation. A donation takes effect when all legal formalities for a valid donation have been complied with.

Donations tax is levied at a rate of 20% on the aggregated value of property donated not exceeding R30 million, and at a rate of 25% on the value exceeding R30 million.

Donations tax applies to any person (for example: individual, company or trust) that is a resident and non-residents are not liable for donations tax. The person making the donation (donor) is liable to pay the donations tax, however if the donor fails to pay the tax within the payment period the donor and donee are jointly and severally liable

Estate Duty

When a natural person (taxpayer) dies, that person is called a 'deceased person' and all his or her assets on date of death will be placed in an estate. This estate is called an estate of a deceased person (commonly known as a 'deceased estate'). Assets in a deceased estate can amongst other things include immovable property (house), movable property (car, furniture, etc), cash in the bank, etc.

The person who administers a deceased estate is called an 'Executor'. Once the Executor has finalised all the administration in the deceased estate, the remaining assets (after paying all the debts) will be distributed to the beneficiaries.

A beneficiary can consist of either heirs and/or legatees. A legatee is a person who receives a specific asset from the deceased estate. An heir is a person who receives the balance of the estate (that is, after all disposals to a legatee are finalised).

Estate Duty is levied on the worldwide property and deemed property of a natural person who is ordinarily resident in South Africa and on South African property of non-residents. Various deductions under Section 4 of the Estate Duty Act of 1955 are allowed to determine the net value of the estate.

An abatement of R3.5 million is allowed against the net value of the estate to determine the dutiable value of the estate. The Estate Duty is levied on the dutiable value of an estate at a rate of 20% on the first R30 million and at a rate of 25% on the dutiable value of the estate above R30 million.

Securities Transfer Tax (STT)

STT is levied at the rate of 0,25% on every transfer of a security, which means any share or depository in a company or member's interest in a close corporation, and any reallocation of securities from a member's bank restricted stock account or a member's unrestricted and security restricted stock account to a member's general restricted stock account.

Transfer Duty

Transfer Duty is a tax levied on the value of any property acquired by any person by way of a transaction or in any other way. For the purpose of Transfer Duty, property means land and fixtures and includes real rights in land, rights to minerals, a share or interest in a "residential property company" or a share in a share-block company. All conveyancers are requested to register with SARS.

Value-Added Tax (VAT)

VAT is an indirect tax on the consumption of goods and services in the economy. Revenue is raised for government by requiring a business, that carries on an enterprise to register for VAT.

In doing so, the business will charge VAT on supplies of goods and services made by it, on the importation of goods and on imported services (subject to certain conditions). The business will also be entitled to deduct any VAT charged to it, or under limited circumstances from a business that is not registered for VAT, in respect of a supply made to it.

VAT is therefore non-cumulative, meaning that a credit/ deduction is allowed for VAT paid in previous stages, within the production and distribution chain. The business is required to pay the difference between the VAT charged by it and the VAT charged to it, or claim a VAT refund where the VAT charged to it exceeds the VAT charged by it.

VAT is therefore, charged at each stage of the production and distribution process and it is proportional to the price charged for the goods and services. It is compulsory for a person to register for VAT if the value of taxable supplies made or to be made, is in excess of R1 million in any consecutive 12 month period. The standard rate of VAT is 15%, and there is a limited range of goods and services which are subject to VAT at the zero rate or are exempt from VAT.

Fuel taxes

The basic fuel price is related to the costs of purchasing petroleum products from international markets, and the costs related to shipping these products to South Africa. This cost is largely influenced by the international price of crude oil and the R/\$ exchange rate.

Environmental levies

The South African Government has responded to the serious global challenge of environmental pollution and climate change by introducing several environmental taxes that are intended to modify behaviour of the country's citizens for sustainable development of the economy.

Plastic Bag Levy

The Plastic Bag Levy was introduced to reduce litter and encourage plastic bag reuse. It is charged at 25 cents per bag as from 1 April 2020.

Electricity Generation Levy

The electricity generation levy was Introduced to encourage sustainable electricity generation and use. The levy is applied to electricity generated from non-renewable sources and costs 3.5 cents per kWh.

Incandescent Bulb Levy

The electric filament lamp levy was introduced to promote energy efficiency by discouraging the use of incandescent light bulbs. It is charged at R10 a bulb from 1 April 2020.

CO2 Motor Vehicle Emissions Levy

The CO2 motor vehicle emissions levy on passenger and double- cab vehicles was introduced to encourage the manufacture and purchase of more energy efficient motor vehicles. It is charged at R120 for every gram above 95gCO₂/km for passenger vehicles and R160 for every gram above 175gCO₂/km for double cab vehicles.

Tyre Levy

The tyre levy on new pneumatic tyres was introduced to encourage efficient tyre use. Although the tyre levy is not earmarked, it indirectly supports the responsible recycling of obsolete tyres. The levy was implemented in 2017 and the current rate is R2.30/kg.

Health Promotion Levy

The Sugary Beverages Levy took effect on 1 April 2018 and the current rate is 2.21 cent/ gram of the sugar content that exceeds 4g/100 ml. The levy applies to specific sugary drinks and concentrates used in the manufacture of sugary drinks to combat obesity and promote healthier consumer beverage choices.

Diamond Export Levy

A Diamond Export Levy on unpolished diamonds exported from South Africa was introduced, effective from 1 November 2008 at a rate of 5% of the value of such diamonds.

Southern African Customs Union (SACU)

SACU consists of Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia, South Africa and Eswatini. The SACU Secretariat is located in Windhoek, Namibia. SACU was established in 1910, making it the world's oldest Customs Union. Negotiations to reform the 1969 Agreement started in 1994, and a new agreement was signed in 2002.

The member states form a single customs territory in which tariffs and other barriers are eliminated on substantially all the trade between the member states for products originating in these countries; and there is a common external tariff that applies to non-members of SACU.

Excise duties

Excise duties are levied on certain locally manufactured goods and their imported equivalents. Specific excise duties are levied on tobacco and liquor products. Ad valorem excise duties are levied on products such as motor vehicles, cellular telephones, electronics and cosmetics.

Customs duties

Customs duties are imposed by the Customs and Excise Act of 1964. Ordinary customs duty is a tax levied on imported goods and is usually calculated on the value of goods imported and collected by the customs unit within SARS.

Customs duty rates in Part 1 of Schedule No. 1 and trade remedies relating to the importation of goods such as anti-dumping, countervailing and safeguard duty are set out in Schedule No. 2 of the Schedules to the Act and are determined through trade policy in terms of the International Trade Administration Act of 2002 administered by the International Trade Administration Commission.

Other taxes

Rates on property

Property-related taxes include municipal rates and charges for refuse and sewerage, which are collected by municipalities.

Payment channels

The majority of taxpayers are now using electronic payment platforms which significantly improve turnaround times. Cash collections at branches have been reduced as have the risks associated with them.

From 1 May 2020, cheque payments in South Africa may not be in excess of R50 000. Payment methods other than branch payments are:

- eFiling: this required a taxpayer to register as an eFiling client in order to make electronic payments using this channel; and
- Payments at banks: taxpayers can make either an internet banking transfer or an over the-counter deposit.

Voluntary Disclosure Programme (VDP)

A permanent VDP was introduced in terms of the Tax Administration Act of 2011, from 1 October 2012. The permanent VDP is part of a package of compliance measures aimed at encouraging non-compliant taxpayers to regularise their tax affairs.

DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC ENTERPRISES (DPE)

The DPE undertakes shareholder oversight of state-owned companies (SOCs) in its portfolio. The department is the primary interface between government and these companies, and provides input into the formulation of policy, legislation and regulation.

In executing its responsibilities, the DPE seeks to direct and support improvements in the financial, commercial and operational performance of these companies and their contribution to the South African economy, and support transformation.

To coordinate reforms in SOCs over the medium-term period, the DPE aimed to continue providing the necessary technical and advisory support to the Presidential SOCs Council in its efforts to reform, revitalise and reposition SOCs.

The DPE oversees the following seven SOCs, which are key drivers of economic growth:

- **Alexkor** – It was established in terms of the Alexkor Limited Act (1992) to mine marine and land diamonds in Alexander Bay, Northern Cape. The outcome of the land and restitution award to the Richtersveld Community resulted in the formation of the Alexkor Richtersveld Mining Company Pooling and Sharing Joint Venture, wherein Alexkor holds a 51% share interest on behalf of government, and the Richtersveld Community holds 49%.

Alexkor does not have any other mining operations outside the joint venture. Over the medium term, the company planned to focus on implementing the turnaround strategy for its diamond mining operations, which have significantly declined in the past three years. Symptomatic of this was production averaging below 30 000 carats over the period and the company not being able to reach the benchmark of more than 45 000 carats that had been achieved previously. Some challenges to underproduction include a lack of funds to undertake exploration activities and maintenance of old infrastructure.

An immediate intervention is to seek mining contractors with the financial and technical capabilities to undertake large-scale mining operations. In the long term, Alexkor's role should be determined in accordance with the challenges it faces. To achieve this, the DPE conducted a study that was expected to be completed in 2023/24, to determine the optimal shareholding structure for Alexkor.

This study will take into account the current market characteristics of the diamond mining industry in relation to government's developmental agenda. The company was not able to submit detailed performance, expenditure, revenue and personnel data at the time of publication, hence no tables are included.

- **Denel** – It was incorporated as a private company in 1992 in terms of the Companies Act of 1973, with the South African Government as its sole shareholder. It operates in the military aerospace and landward defence environment and provides strategic defence equipment. The company's broad focus over the medium term will be on implementing its turnaround plan, which entails rolling out its new operating model, restructuring and optimising its cost structure.

The new operating model reduces Denel's structure from six core business units to three – engineering, manufacturing, and maintenance and overhaul. This change will not only result in decreased expenditure, but in the improved allocation of critical resources. It will also require that the company accelerate

its disposal of non-core assets and businesses, improve supply chain policies and align its IT infrastructure with its new organisational structure.

The company's revenue had decreased due to persistent liquidity challenges. This was exacerbated by fixed costs and under-recoveries across the group, resulting in the company continuing to be loss making, thereby eroding its solvency.

This, among other things, was related to the company having lost experienced personnel with critical skills over the years, which threatened its sustainability. To fund the turnaround plan's response to these challenges, the company was expected to access funds through proceeds from the sale of non-core disposals and shareholder recapitalisation.

- **Eskom** – It is mandated to generate, transmit and distribute electricity to industrial, mining, commercial, agricultural and residential customers and redistributors. Significant progress has been made on the company's legal separation into three subsidiaries: transmission, generation and distribution. In this regard, the National Transmission Company of South Africa was corporatised in December 2021, and will be operationalised once the National Energy Regulator of South Africa issues its licence.

The National Electricity Distribution Company of South Africa was expected to be corporatised during 2023/24. The company's new board was appointed in October 2022 and has been tasked with ensuring a performance turnaround for operations. This is expected to result in improving energy availability from 58% as at 30 September 2022 to 66.5% by 2025/26. The current low availability of energy is due to high unplanned breakdowns and unit trips, which account for 30.8% of the company's non-availability of generation capacity.

To improve operational performance, the board is working with the national energy crisis committee, which was established by the President in July 2022. The committee's purpose is to oversee the implementation of an action plan to end load shedding and achieve energy security in the country. As part of the company's build programme, the Kusile Power Station is expected to be completed in May 2024. Interventions and modifications to repair construction defects at the Medupi and Kusile power stations are expected to be completed by the end of 2023.

This includes the recent failure of the flue-gas ducting that has impacted units 1 to 3 of the Kusile Power Station. To support the transition from coal to renewable energy, in line with government's energy policy, Komati Power Station was shut down on 31 October 2022 and by mid-2023 it was

being repurposed with renewable energy technologies that will supply clean electricity to the economy and the public.

- **South African Forestry Company** – It was established in 1992 in terms of the Management of State Forests Act of 1992. It is mandated to ensure the sustainable management of plantation forests, increase downstream timber processing, and play a catalytic role in rural economic development and transformation. The company contributes to approximately 1 772 direct jobs and more than 1 000 employment positions in small to medium companies through community projects and other services.

Over the medium term, the company planned to improve its performance by implementing its 50:50 revenue strategy, which entails plantation, processing and other businesses contributing equally. The company was also expected to focus on increasing its processing capacity through upgrading the Timbadola processing plant in Limpopo. This will reduce operating costs at the plant, particularly for repairs and maintenance. The company derives most of its revenue from the sale of sawlogs and lumber.

- **South African Airways (SAA)** – It operates a full-service network in the international, regional and domestic markets. The airline is responsible for promoting air links with South Africa's key business, trading and tourism markets across the world, and contributing to key domestic air linkages. The company was placed under business rescue in December 2019 and exited the process in April 2021.

The SAA resumed operations in September 2021, operating domestically and regionally, and has since been operating six aircraft. Over the medium-term period, the airline planned to increase its operations and improve its service offering, for example, by expanding its route network. Government was in the process of concluding the sale of its majority shareholding in the company to a strategic equity partner.

This was expected to attract the funding and skills required to strengthen the airline's balance sheet and improve its operations. The partnership was expected to be finalised by the end of 2022/23, but due to outstanding matters such as regulatory approvals from the Competition Commission and the Air Services Licensing Council, it was expected to be concluded in 2023/24.

- **Transnet** – It provides and operates freight transportation services and infrastructure. The company's key strategic objectives include improving logistics competitiveness, promoting a modal shift from road to rail, increasing

logistics connectivity, attracting private investment, developing skills and promoting reindustrialisation.

To sustain and expand its capacity, over the five-year period ending in 2026/27, Transnet had planned to invest money into the rail sector, ports and pipeline infrastructure. However, these investments were hindered due to the company having to reduce capital expenditure in 2022/23 by 9.2% because of liquidity constraints associated with limited profitability.

Significant turnaround in operations, and as such the company's financial position, in the short term have been impacted by events such as severe damages at the port of Durban and along the KwaZulu-Natal Rail Corridor due to flooding in the province in April 2022. To assist the company with repairs, government allocated R2.9 billion in 2022/23 through the Special Appropriation Act of 2022.

To assist with clearing the backlog in its infrastructure build, maintenance and modernisation programme, Transnet is actively seeking private sector participation in its operations. Investment from the private sector is also expected to contribute to the migration from road to rail, with the aim of reducing the total national cost of logistics. By mid-2023, the DPE was working with Transnet to develop a turnaround plan that would address various operational and infrastructure funding challenges.

DEPARTMENT OF TRADE, INDUSTRY AND COMPETITION (the dtic)

The mandate of the dtic is derived from a broad legislative framework, which includes the:

- Industrial Development Corporation Act of 1940;
- Manufacturing Development Act of 1993;
- Competition Act of 1998, as amended;
- International Trade Administration Act of 2002;
- Broad-based Black Economic Empowerment Act of 2003;
- Companies Act of 2008;
- Consumer Protection Act of 2008; and
- Special Economic Zones Act of 2014.

The department planned to continue to develop and implement various sectoral master plans over the medium-term period. These are key components of the reimagined industrial strategy, which presents a multipronged approach to industrial development, with an emphasis on building partnerships with the private sector to secure investment that creates jobs.

Over the period ahead, this entailed focusing on supporting the implementation of key interventions of South Africa's Economic Reconstruction and Recovery Plan (ERRP), particularly by providing industrial finance, developing industrial infrastructure, and enhancing competitiveness and localisation.

Providing industrial finance

In support of the ERRP, initiatives in the Incentives programme are aimed at growing sustainable and competitive enterprises through providing direct or indirect industrial financing.

Over the next three years, the dtic planned to continue providing financial support to the Automotive Incentive Scheme, the Black Industrialist Programme, the Agro-processing Support Scheme, the Strategic Partnership Programme, and the Aquaculture Development and Enhancement Programme.

The department also planned to provide financial assistance or support to 300 clothing and textile firms through the clothing and textiles competitiveness programme.

The dtic planned to implement the new energy vehicle roadmap, which is intended to enhance the transitioning of the automotive industry in South Africa from internal combustion engines to electric motors, in line with global trends.

Developing industrial infrastructure

A critical part of the ERRP includes interventions to catalyse investment through infrastructure development. This includes subsidising bulk infrastructure and top structures (factories) in special economic zones, and rolling out infrastructure to revitalise a targeted 16 industrial parks over the medium term. These subsidies are provided mainly for special economic zones, industrial parks and for critical bulk infrastructure such as water, electricity and sewerage connections.

Enhancing industrial competitiveness and localisation

The dtic aimed to enhance industrial competitiveness at firm and sector level through conditions on financial incentives and local procurement policies that encourage industry to use local products.

This entailed disbursing funds to technical institutions such as the Proudly South African campaign to support sectoral work on master plans and projects that aim to improve industrialisation and competitiveness, and increase localisation.

Through collaboration between government, business and labour, these policy interventions are aimed at building local industrial capacity for the domestic and export markets.

DEPARTMENT OF SMALL BUSINESS DEVELOPMENT (DSBD)

The DSBD is tasked with the responsibility of leading and coordinating an integrated approach to the promotion and development of entrepreneurship, small businesses and cooperatives; and ensuring an enabling legislative and policy environment to support their growth and sustainability. The realisation of this mandate is expected to lead to a transformed and inclusive economy driven by sustainable, innovative SMMEs and cooperatives.

Over the medium term, the department aimed to focus on providing support to SMMEs and cooperatives. This included providing greater access to financial and non-financial support for SMMEs, cooperatives, start-ups and township and

rural enterprises; establishing infrastructure to expose SMMEs and cooperatives to global market opportunities; and establishing an adjudicator's office to regulate licensing and business practices in the sector.

The DSBD supports SMMEs primarily through the SEDA. To enable a new generation of job creators to contribute to economic transformation, the department aimed to support 30 000 young entrepreneurs by providing opportunities for self-employment.

It also aimed to link over 750 SMMEs and cooperatives to international market opportunities over the medium-term period, with particular emphasis on enterprises run by women, young people and people with disabilities.

In an effort to establish a Small Enterprise Ombud Service, substantial funds have been set aside over the medium term to regulate and license businesses owned by foreign nationals, regulate unfair business practices and review the definition of SMMEs to arrive at an inclusive understanding. The department will also provide informal and micro enterprises with equipment.

Johannesburg Stock Exchange (JSE)

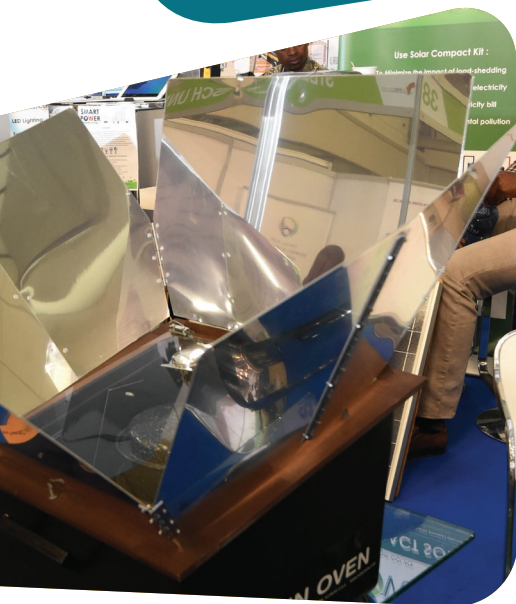
The JSE is a multi-asset class stock exchange that offers listings, trading clearing and settlement, information services and issuer services. Founded in 1887, the JSE is Africa's largest stock exchange by market capitalisation. It is the 16th largest stock exchange in the world. The JSE operates five financial markets: the Equity Market, the Equity Derivatives Market, the Currency Derivatives Market, the Interest Rate Market and the Commodity Derivatives Market.

South African Anti-Money Laundering Integrated Task Force (SAMLIT)

SAMLIT was formed in 2019 as a public-private partnership of regulatory authorities (the FIC and the Prudential Authority of the SARB), 26 domestic and international banks registered in South Africa, and banking industry representatives, namely, the South African Banking Risk Information Centre and the Banking Association South Africa.

Its primary objectives include increasing knowledge on financial flows associated with financial crimes and facilitating timeous information sharing with the intention of identifying, disrupting and preventing the furtherance of financial crime. This is achieved through collaboration with law enforcement, prosecutorial authorities and others.

In 2020 SAMLIT formed an expert working group on illegal wildlife trade with a view to increasing knowledge about the financial flows associated with this crime among financial institutions, law-enforcement and prosecuting authorities.



EDUCATION

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
SOUTH AFRICA

2022/23

Basic Education

The mandate of the Department of Basic Education (DBE) is to monitor the standards of the provision, delivery and performance of education annually or at other specified intervals across South Africa, with the objective of assessing compliance with the provisions of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 and national education policy.

The department derives its mandate from the:

- **National Education Policy Act of 1996**, which inscribes into law the policies, legislative and monitoring responsibilities of the Minister of Basic Education, and the formal relations between national and provincial authorities.
- **South African Schools Act of 1996**, which promotes access to education, promotes quality and democratic governance in the schooling system, and makes schooling compulsory for children aged seven to 15 to ensure that all learners have access to quality education without discrimination.
- **Employment of Educators Act of 1998**, which regulates the professional, moral and ethical responsibilities of educators, and competency requirements for teachers.

Over the medium term, the department planned to focus on improving school infrastructure; providing support to improve matric completion rates; providing high-quality support materials for learners and teachers; facilitating the increase in supply of quality teachers while preparing serving teachers to teach new subjects that will prepare learners for a changing world; improving services provided through the Early Childhood Development (ECD) function taken over from the social development sector; and providing nutritious meals for learners through the National School Nutrition Programme (NSNP).

Providing support to improve matric completion rates

To reduce the learner dropout rate, the Second Chance Matric Programme provides support to matrics who do not meet the pass requirements of the National senior certificate examinations or senior certificate (amended). Over the medium-term period, the programme aims to increase the number of learners obtaining subject passes from 50 000 to 100 000, partly driven by its expansion to include learners with barriers to learning, starting with visually and hearing-impaired learners in 2023.

Providing high-quality learning materials

In recognition that access to workbooks is essential for quality learning and teaching, the department plans to print and distribute an estimated 60 million workbooks over the medium-term period for grades R to 9 in languages, mathematics and life skills to all public schools that request them. An estimated R3.8 billion is allocated over the period ahead for this in the Curriculum and Quality Enhancement subprogramme in the Curriculum Policy, Support and Monitoring programme.

Facilitating more quality teachers

The Funza Lushaka bursary programme collaborates with the Department of Higher Education and Training in its efforts to address critical educator shortages in priority subject areas such as inclusive education, mathematics, coding, robotics, and science and technology.

Providing nutritious meals for learners

The department's NSNP continues to contribute to eliminating poverty and supporting food security by providing meals to an estimated nine million learners on each school day at 19 550 schools in 2023/24, increasing to a targeted 20 000 schools in 2025/26.

The NSNP provides one nutritious meal to all learners in poorer primary and secondary schools to improve their ability to learn. The programme also teaches learners and parents how to lead a healthy lifestyle, and promotes the development of school vegetable gardens.

Action Plan to 2024: Towards the Realisation of Schooling 2030

The department's Action Plan to 2024: Towards the Realisation of Schooling 2030, gives expression to the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, the National Development Plan, as well as continental and international conventions. It continues to provide the moral imperative and a mandate to government to make the social justice principles of access, redress, equity, efficiency, inclusivity and quality educational opportunities, widely available to all citizens.

Languages

The Incremental Introduction to African Languages Strategy was initiated in 2013 to strengthen the teaching of previously marginalised African languages in public schools.

The department has since decided to expand the list of South African languages offered as Second Additional Languages (SAL) in curriculum. The additional languages are the Khoi, Nama and San languages, as well as the South African Sign Language, which is now the country's 12th official language. The DBE has since signed an agreement with Kenya and Tanzania on the development of curriculum and the South African teachers in Kiswahili.

School attendance

Approximately 14,5 million individuals aged 5–24 years attended school in 2022; 50,3% were males and 49,7% females, according to Statistics South Africa's Census 2022. The table shows a rising number in school attendance among children, with attendance peaking among 11–13-year olds.

Furthermore, attendance was almost consistently evenly distributed by gender except among 17–20-year-olds, where fewer females were likely to attend. However, more females compared to males attended school among the 21–24-year-olds.

The period between 1996 to 2001 showed a large increase in the percentage of young children under the age of compulsory education participating in education (23,1 percentage points among five-year-olds and 21,2 percentage points among six-year-olds). However, it is the decade between 2001 and 2011 that showed an unprecedented increase in participation among five-year-olds with a rise of 35,5 percentage points in participation from 45,6% to 81,1%.

Furthermore, nearly nine out of 10 (92,4%) children of this age were attending educational institutions in 2022, which is a nearly 70 percentage points increase from 1996. Among six-year-olds, less than half (49,1%) were attending educational institutions in 1996 but subsequently increased by 21,2 percentage points in 2001.

The data also show high attendance rates among six to seven-year olds in 2022, who would most likely be attending Grade R. However, the attendance rate starts to decline by age 15, with only six out of 10 (59,9%) 18-year-olds attending educational institutions in 2022; a reduction from 75,7% in 1996. In 1996 more than half (54,6%) of the 20-year-olds were in education, which reduced to 37,0% in 2022.

Overall, the percentage of individuals attending school increased from 70,1% in 1996 to 73,4% in 2022. However, not much change was observed between 2011 and 2022. The percentage of black Africans who attended school increased by 3,4 percentage points from 1996 to 2022, coloureds by 1,1 percentage points and whites by 6,8 percentage points. The number of individuals who were not attending school declined across all population groups from 1996 to 2022. Moreover, the white population group experienced a substantial decline from 29,4% in 1996 to 22,6% in 2022, and black Africans from 29,3% in 1996 to 25,9% in 2022.

Overall, the percentage of individuals attending educational institutions increased from 70,1% in 1996 to 71,5% in 2001, but remained steady at 73,4% across both 2011 and 2022. During the past 26 years, the overall growth in attendance was 3,3 percentage points. In the five-year period from 1996 to 2001, Limpopo and Eastern Cape accounted for the highest increase in the percentage of attendance (3,5 and 3,7 percentage points respectively).

In Limpopo, the percentage of individuals aged 5–24 years attending educational institutions increased to 78,3% in 2001 from 74,8% in 1996. In Eastern Cape, the percentage of individuals aged 5–24 years attending educational institutions increased to 76,2% in 2001 from 72,5% in 1996. The percentage in attendance remained unchanged for Western Cape, Gauteng and North West during the same period.

Furthermore, in the quarter of the century between 1996 and 2022, the largest growth in attendance was observed in Northern Cape, Limpopo and KwaZulu-Natal (6,1, 5,8 and 5,3 percentage points respectively). In Free State, the largest rise in attendance was observed during 2011–2022 with the percentage of individuals aged 5–24 years attending educational institutions increasing by nearly four percentage points, from 73,1% to 76,8%. Across all the census years,

Eastern Cape, Free State, Mpumalanga and Limpopo consistently displayed attendance levels above the national average.

South Africa has geared up to intensify its measures through policy reforms to tackle school dropouts and increase completion of secondary schooling. Post-apartheid South Africa has experienced an expansion in the completion of secondary schooling for previously disadvantaged population groups.

However, race disparity in educational attainment intersects with other forms of disadvantage, including poverty and the urban-rural divide. This section presents progress in educational attainment in the past three decades and equity by gender and population group.

Mpumalanga and Limpopo had the highest percentage of persons with no schooling, which was above the national average of 6,9% (11,7% and 14,1% respectively). The lowest percentage of individuals with no schooling was found in Western Cape (2,3%), followed by Gauteng (3,9%).

The majority of individuals aged 20 years and older in Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga had completed secondary education, which is also above the national average (42,9%, 41,2% and 40,2% respectively). The lowest percentage of individuals who completed secondary education was found in Eastern Cape (27,2%). In Western Cape, close to 18% of individuals aged 20 years and older had achieved post-school education, followed by Gauteng (16,2%).

More than 14,1 million persons aged 20 years and older completed secondary education in 2022, followed by 11,9 million who achieved some secondary education and 4,6 million who attained post-school education. Close to 2,6 million persons aged 20 years and older had no schooling and 1,3 million had completed primary education.

In terms of post-school education, the stark results are that disparities primarily exist among different population groups. For instance, regardless of sex, the white population group reported the highest percentage of post-school education attainment, followed by Indian/Asian population with half as much as that for the white population group.

However, the notable sex differences appear primarily within the black African and coloured population groups. Both groups show lower levels of post-school education, and these levels are nearly comparable between the two population groups.

Black African and coloured populations tend to be concentrated in some secondary education level, which may suggest higher dropout rates and limited progression to tertiary education. Conversely, the white and Indian/Asian population groups are more likely to be concentrated in the completed secondary school and post-secondary education levels.

Role players

Provincial departments of basic education

The DBE shares a concurrent role with the provincial departments for basic schooling and ECD, but it is the responsibility of each provincial department

to finance and manage its schools directly. District offices are the provincial departments' main interface with schools.

South African Council for Educators (SACE)

The SACE is mandated by the SACE Act of 2000 to enhance the status of the teaching profession by providing for the professional registration of all educators, promoting the continuing professional development of educators, and maintaining ethical and professional standards in the teaching profession.

Umalusi Council for Quality Assurance in General and Further Education and Training

Umalusi derives its mandate from the National Qualifications Framework (NQF) Act of 2008 and the General and Further Education and Training Quality Assurance Act of 2001. As an external and independent quality assurance body, the council's mandate is to set and maintain standards in general and further education and training through the development and management of the general and further education and training qualifications sub-framework.

Programmes and projects

Thutong portal

Through the Thutong Portal (www.thutong.doe.gov.za), the DBE aims to lead the drive to improve learning in the country through appropriate use of technology. The Thutong Portal is the online point of entry to a comprehensive array of free educational resources, policy information, and interactive services concerning all aspects of the South African schooling sector.

It provides relevant information and services about the South African school curriculum, teacher development, school administration, and management. Thutong's key focus is on creating strong and vibrant online communities of practice to facilitate discussion and sharing of information and ideas amongst peer networks, and in an effort to encourage South African educators to develop and improve education by sharing the country's common intellectual capital.

Thutong – meaning “a place of learning” in Setswana – features a searchable database of web-based curriculum resources for various education sectors, grades and subjects.

School fees and exemption

School fees are set at annual public meetings of school governing bodies (SGBs), where parents vote on the amount to be paid. Parents who cannot afford to pay school fees can apply to the SGB for conditional, partial or full exemption from paying school fees.

Schools must not charge school fees for orphans. The right not to charge school fees is limited to the schools that have been declared no-fee schools. The names of the no-fee schools, which are determined based on the economic level of the community around the school, are published in a provincial gazette.

Higher education and training

The Department of Higher Education and Training (DHET) derives its mandate from the:

- **Higher Education Act of 1997**, which provides for a unified national system of higher education;
- **Skills Development Act of 1998**, which enables the creation of the National Skills Authority (NSA) and sector education and training authorities (SETAs); the establishment of the Quality Council for Trades and Occupations (QCTO); and the regulation of apprenticeships, learnerships and other matters relating to skills development;
- **National Student Financial Aid Scheme (NSFAS) Act of 1999**, which provides for the granting of loans and bursaries to eligible students attending public higher education and training institutions, and the subsequent administration of such loans and bursaries;
- **Skills Development Levies Act of 1999**, which provides for the imposition of skills development levies;
- **Continuing Education and Training Act of 2006**, which provides for the regulation of continuing education and training, the establishment of governance structures for and the funding of public technical and vocational education and training (TVET) colleges and community education and training colleges, the registration of private colleges, and the promotion of quality in continuing education and training.
- **NQF Act of 2008**, which provides for the NQF, South African Qualifications Authority, and quality councils for the issuing and quality assurance of qualifications required by the sub-frameworks of the NQF.

Over the medium term, the DHET planned to focus on supporting the post-school education and training system by expanding access to higher education and facilitating the transition to work, and enhancing performance by upgrading infrastructure and increasing capacity.

Expanding access to higher education and facilitating the transition to work

The NSFAS was set to receive R153.2 billion over the medium-term period for student bursaries, accounting for 93.6% (R153.2 billion) of the entity's total estimated expenditure of R163.7 billion.

The scheme aims to use these funds to provide financial assistance to an estimated 1.3 million university and 1.2 million TVET college students from poor and working-class backgrounds.

The department has two programmes in the Presidential Youth Employment Initiative. These are aimed at facilitating the transition to work by providing unemployed young people with employment and training opportunities. In 2023/24, the university graduate assistants programme aims to provide employment to 2 559 unemployed graduates at 26 universities in fields related to their areas of study.

Enhancing performance by upgrading infrastructure and increasing capacity

The DHET planned to ensure that its institutions have appropriate infrastructure to accommodate students who access higher education. It also planned to alleviate overcrowding and upgrade ailing infrastructure at universities.

These allocations will enable infrastructure repairs and maintenance in priority areas such as bulk services, sanitation, teaching and learning facilities, and student accommodation. The majority of community learning centres are hosted at schools. Their programme offering is affected by the lack of proper tools, equipment, security and suitable furniture to support teaching and learning.

The percentage of individuals with no schooling has reduced almost threefold (19,1% in 1996 and 6,9% in 2022). The percentage of individuals with some primary education has reduced by half. Similarly, completion of primary schooling has decreased by half. Completion of secondary education more than doubled from 16,3% in 1996 to 37,6% in 2022.

However, achievement of post-school education increased by only 5,1 percentage points. In 1996, one-third (33,6%) of the population aged 20 years and older had only some secondary education and only 16,3% had completed secondary education. However, in 2022 more than one-third (37,6%) had completed secondary education.

Furthermore, in 2022 functional literacy of the population aged 20 years and older was 85%, up from a low base of 64,3% in 1996. The largest expansion in functional literacy was observed between 2001 and 2011 (66% and 78,8% respectively). The number of individuals aged 20 years and older with no schooling reduced from 4,0 million in 1996, to 2,6 million in 2022.

Access to certain fields of study in post-secondary education remains segregated by sex as females are more likely to earn qualifications in education, while males would most likely qualify in the science, engineering and technology fields. This section presents progress in fields of education in the past decade.

More than three million individuals aged 20 years and older reported a field of education in 2011; this has increased to 5,2 million in 2022. The two principal fields of study for both 2011 and 2022 were business, economics and management sciences, and education. Both fields of study were dominated by females, with wider gender gaps observed in the education field.

The percentage of females with qualifications in education was 69,6% in 2011 and increased to 72,3% in 2022. Males dominated in engineering with 84,9% in 2011 and 78,1% in 2022, as well as electrical infrastructure (83,6% in 2011 and 79,4% in 2022). For both periods, females were more likely to obtain a qualification in health professions and related clinical sciences (75,6% in 2011 and 75,7% in 2022).

The percentage of males who studied computer and information sciences increased from 57,2% in 2011 to 61,5% in 2022 while the percentage of females declined from 42,8% in 2011 to 38,5% in 2022.

Furthermore, the number of individuals with qualifications in communication, journalism and related studies more than doubled within the decade, from 46

048 in 2011 to 93 140 in 2022. This field of study had more females in both years (60,6% in 2011 and 63,2% in 2022).

Early Childhood Development

The department took over the ECD function, including the ECD Grant, from the Department of Social Development from 1 April 2022. Over the medium-term period, the grant will provide subsidies for children accessing ECD services, provide infrastructure support to ECD providers and pilot the construction of low-cost ECD centres.

More than three million children aged 0–4 years participated in ECD programmes. Crèche/educare centre and pre-school/nursery school/Grade 00/Grade 000/Grade R were the most accessed ECD facilities. Provincial analysis revealed that children in Northern Cape and North West were more likely not to participate in ECD programmes compared to other provinces.

In addition, differentials in population group show that seven out of ten black African children attended an ECD programme compared to eight out of 10 white children. The use of day mothers/gogos/childminders for childcare was high among the Indian/Asian population compared to other population groups. Participation in home/community playgroups was highest amongst coloured children.

Furthermore, an analysis of persons aged 5–24 shows that overall, the percentage of individuals attending an educational institution increased by three percentage points between 1996 and 2022. Attendance increased to almost universal level between 1996 and 2022 for children aged five and six years, while the attendance rate starts to decline by age 15–24 over the same period. Attendance also increased for black Africans, coloureds and whites over the period, while Indians/Asians showed little change.

An analysis of persons aged 20 years and older showed that the number of people with no formal education reduced from 19,1% in 1996 to 6,9% in 2022. Furthermore, persons aged 20 years and older with some primary education decreased from 16,6% in 1996 to 7,4% in 2022.

Over the period, there has been a noteworthy increase in the number of persons completing secondary education (16,3% in 1996 to 37,6% in 2022) and post-school education (7,1% in 1996 to 12,2% in 2022). In 2011 and 2022, business, economics and management sciences and education were dominated by females, while males continue to dominate in engineering as well as electrical infrastructure studies.

Institutions of higher learning

South Africa's higher education landscape comprises the following institutions:

- Cape Peninsula University of Technology
- Central University of Technology, Free State
- Durban Institute of Technology
- Mangosuthu University of Technology

- National Institute for Higher Education, Northern Cape
- National Institute for Higher Education, Mpumalanga
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University
- North-West University
- Rhodes University
- Sol Plaatje University, Eastern Cape
- Tshwane University of Technology
- University of Cape Town
- University of Fort Hare
- University of the Free State
- University of Johannesburg
- University of KwaZulu-Natal
- University of Limpopo
- University of Mpumalanga
- University of Pretoria
- University of South Africa
- University of Stellenbosch
- University of Venda
- University of the Western Cape
- University of the Witwatersrand
- University of Zululand
- Vaal University of Technology
- Walter Sisulu University, Eastern Cape
- Sefako Makgatho Health Sciences University.

Technical and Vocational Education and Training

The DHET is mandated to provide quality skills programmes that address the need in the labour market for intermediate skills accompanied by practical training. TVET comprises vocational, occupational and artisan education and training as offered by TVET colleges.

This band of education and training is also referred to as ‘post-school’, meaning that it refers to education and training that takes place after leaving school, even if only with a Grade 9 completed.

The only age restriction for a person wishing to study at the TVET level is that the person should be 16 years or older. There are 50 registered and accredited public TVET colleges in South Africa operating on more than 264 campuses spread across the rural and urban areas of the country.

Role players:

South African Qualifications Authority

The SAQA is a statutory body established in terms of the SAQA Act of 1995. It exists under the NQF Act of 2008, as amended, with the role of providing decisive and coherent leadership to coordinate, simplify, monitor and evaluate the implementation of an effectively articulated national qualifications framework.

The authority will focus on enhancing its ICT infrastructure over the medium term to automate the national learner records database and verify qualifications. It will also continue to refurbish, repair and maintain its headquarters while continuing its efforts to sell the building.

Council on Higher Education (CHE)

The CHE is a statutory body established in terms of the Higher Education Act of 1997, as amended. The council's mandate is to advise the Minister responsible for higher education on all matters pertaining to higher education; develop and manage the higher education qualifications sub-framework; develop and implement a suite of policies and criteria; and facilitate the implementation of the higher education qualifications sub-framework and the NQF and protect their integrity.

Over the medium term, the council planned to continue focusing on becoming a recognised centre for information and policy analysis on higher education, and on conducting sector research and monitoring to advise the minister on all higher education matters.

Quality Council for Trades and Occupations

The QCTO was established in terms of the Skills Development Act of 1998. The council's mandate is to develop and quality assure occupational qualifications and part qualifications (including trades and skills programmes), manage the occupational qualifications sub-framework, and advise the Minister on all matters of policy concerning occupational standards and qualifications.

Over the medium term, the council planned to continue focusing on overseeing the conversion of national accredited technical education diploma qualifications into occupational qualifications that have greater industry relevance, and developing and submitting new occupational qualifications to the SAQA for registration.

Sector education and training authorities

The Skills Development Act of 1998 mandates SETAs to fund skills development; implement national, sector and workplace strategies to develop and improve skills in the South African workforce; and provide learnerships that lead to recognised occupational qualifications.

Over the medium term, the authorities planned to focus on strengthening and delivering relevant priority skills to South Africa's labour market, with particular emphasis on partnering with TVET colleges, universities and the market. The authorities will continue to establish partnerships with industry to scale up the placement of graduates, work-integrated learning, research, and the facilitation of industry exposure for TVET college lecturers in line with industry needs.

These partnerships also allow authorities to garner labour market intelligence that informs sector skills plans and curriculum development, which improves the quality of programmes offered and the employability of graduates. The authorities

derive the bulk of their revenue through the skills development levy, which is collected from employers by the South African Revenue Service and transferred as a direct charge against the National Revenue Fund.

National Skills Authority

The NSA is a statutory body that was first established in 1999 in terms of Chapter 2 of the Skills Development Act of 1998. Its functions involve:

- policy, strategy, implementation and NSA allocations;
- liaising with SETAs about policy, strategy and sector-skills plans;
- implementing the National Skills Development Strategy;
- reviewing the accounts and balance sheet of NSA annually; and
- receiving and using information from the Skills Development Planning Unit.

National Student Financial Aid Scheme

The NSFAS was established in terms of the NSFAS Act of 1999. The scheme is responsible for:

- providing bursaries and loans to students;
- developing criteria and conditions for the granting of loans and bursaries to eligible students in consultation with the minister;
- raising funds; recovering loans from debtors;
- maintaining and analysing a database of funded students;
- undertaking research for the better use of financial resources;
- advising the minister on matters relating to student financial aid; and
- undertaking other functions assigned to it by the act or by the Minister.

Over the medium-term period, the NSFAS aimed to provide bursaries to 1.4 million university students and 1.7 million TVET students from poor and working-class backgrounds at 76 public higher education institutions.

It also aimed to look to improve the bursary application process so that applicants can get immediate confirmation of funding and resolve issues with the disbursement of tuition and student allowances.



FORESTRY, FISHERIES AND THE ENVIRONMENT

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
SOUTH AFRICA

2022/23

Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment

The Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE) is mandated to give effect to the right of citizens to an environment that is not harmful to their health or wellbeing, and that is protected for the benefit of current and future generations. To this end, the department provides leadership on sustainability in environmental management, conservation and protection for the benefit of South Africans and the global community.

The department's mandate is derived from legislation that includes the:

- Marine Living Resources Act of 1998, which deals with the sustainable long-term use of marine living resources;
- National Environmental Management Act of 1998, which provides for specific legislation on biodiversity and heritage resources, oceans and coasts, climate change and air quality management, and waste and chemicals management;
- National Forests Act of 1998, which promotes the sustainable management and development of forests for the benefit of all, and creates the conditions necessary to restructure forestry in state forests for protection and sustainable use;
- National Veld and Forest Fire Act of 1998, which provides for the prevention and combating of veld, forest and mountain fires across South Africa;
- National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act of 2004, which reforms the law regulating air quality to protect the environment by providing reasonable measures for preventing pollution and ecological degradation, and securing ecologically sustainable development; and provides for national norms and standards that regulate the monitoring of air quality;
- National Environmental Management Amendment Act of 2004, which streamlines the regulation and administration of environmental impact assessment processes;
- National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (NEMBA) of 2004, which significantly reforms the laws regulating biodiversity;
- National Environmental Management: Integrated Coastal Management Act of 2008, which promotes the conservation of the coastal environment, and ensures that development practices and the use of natural resources are sustainable;
- National Environmental Management: Waste Act of 2008, which reforms the law regulating waste management to protect health and the environment by providing reasonable measures to prevent pollution; and
- National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act of 2009, which provides for the assignment of national parks, special parks and heritage sites in terms of the World Heritage Convention Act of 1999.

Over the medium term, the department planned to continue focusing on supporting an equitable transition to a low-carbon economy and a climate-resilient society; creating jobs and work opportunities through the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP); and creating an enabling environment for South Africa's transition to a circular economy.

Over the medium term, the responsibility for enforcement at ports of entry was expected to be shifted to the Border Management Authority.

Supporting an equitable transition to environmental stability

The department plays a pivotal role in ensuring that South Africa is equipped to manage and mitigate the effects of climate change. Over the medium-term period, the department aimed to promote the enactment of the National Climate Change Bill, which is intended to serve as the overarching legislative framework for adapting to and mitigating the effects of climate change. The Act will be supported by the implementation of the low-emission development and growth, and national climate change adaptation strategies.

As jobs in the coal, agriculture, tourism, petrol-based transport and metals sectors are likely to be affected by climate change, the department planned to spearhead the development of climate resilience plans such as the national climate change response policy in these sectors.

The department also planned to support provinces and municipalities in developing and implementing plans to adapt to climate change.

Creating work opportunities and jobs

Over the medium term, the department aimed to create work opportunities and full-time equivalent jobs through the EPWP.

These opportunities and jobs will be created through projects and initiatives that involve: restoring and rehabilitating degraded ecosystems (environmental protection and infrastructure programme); increasing the percentage of land under conservation and managing land use sustainably (Working for Ecosystems); protecting, restoring and rehabilitating wetlands (Working for Wetlands); protecting water resources (Working for Water); addressing the challenges faced by the fisheries sector (Working for Fisheries); and sustaining production, growth and transformation in the forestry sector (Working for Forests).

Transitioning to a circular economy

Over the medium term, the department aimed to focus on creating an enabling environment to support South Africa's transition to a circular economy, which entails shifting away from the current wasteful economy to an economy that is more regenerative, inclusive and equitable. Accordingly, over the medium-term period, the department planned to review and strengthen the extended producer responsibility policy framework and regulations.

The aim of this is to ensure that priority waste streams – such as plastics, paper and packaging, lighting, and electrical and electronics – are minimised, and that a culture of reusing and recycling is widely adopted by industry.

It also planned to implement the National Waste Management Strategy, which is aimed at minimising waste and diverting 40% of waste from landfills over the medium term to be recycled, repurposed and reintroduced into the economy. An example of the department's facilitation of this shift is in the tyre industry, for

which the department is finalising the implementation of a waste management plan that will be carried out over the medium term.

The plan is being developed in partnership with the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research and the Department of Trade, Industry and Competition, and includes the establishment of sustainable markets for recycled tyre products and the development of processing capacity to support the sustainable recycling of old tyres.

By providing training to municipal councillors and officials on waste management over the medium term, the department will seek to strengthen capacity and improve waste management in municipalities. This involves supporting the development of the integrated waste management plan, collection and diversion from landfills, and the implementation of clean-up campaigns and public awareness programmes such as War on Waste.

Role players:

South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI)

The SANBI was established in terms of the NEMBA of 2004. Its mandate is to monitor and report on the status of South Africa's biodiversity; all listed threatened or protected species, ecosystems and invasive species; and the impact of any genetically modified organisms released into the environment.

Over the medium term, the institute aimed to focus on restoring and rehabilitating ecosystems across South Africa by maintaining and improving existing national botanical and zoological gardens; conducting research and supporting policies on biodiversity; and refurbishing existing infrastructure in the newly designated and developed national botanical gardens in Kwelela (Eastern Cape) and Thohoyandou (Limpopo).

South African National Parks (SANParks)

SANParks was established in terms of the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act of 2003. Its mandate is to conserve, protect, control and manage national parks and other defined protected areas and their biodiversity.

As the presence of an efficiently managed system of national parks is a key component of the national tourism economy, the entity plays a significant role in the economy and acts as a catalyst for local economic development. Through the implementation of the EPWP, the entity provides significant support to small, medium and micro enterprises, particularly in rural areas.

Over the medium term, the entity planned to focus on fighting poaching, particularly rhino poaching in the Kruger National Park and abalone poaching in the Western Cape; acquiring 30 752 hectares of land as part of its land inclusion plan; developing and upgrading infrastructure within national parks; and managing more than four million hectares of terrestrial and 369 657 hectares of marine protected biodiversity through a system of 21 national parks and 10 marine protected areas.

The national parks are:

- Addo Elephant National Park
- Agulhas National Park
- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld Transfrontier Park
- Augrabies Falls National Park
- Bontebok National Park
- Camdeboo National Park
- Garden Route (Tsitsikamma, Knysna and Wilderness) National Park
- Golden Gate Highlands National Park
- Karoo National Park
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- Kruger National Park
- Mapungubwe National Park
- Marakele National Park
- Mokala National Park
- Mountain Zebra National Park
- Namaqua National Park
- Table Mountain National Park (which incorporates the Cape of Good Hope, Table Mountain and Silvermine nature reserves)
- Tankwa Karoo National Park
- West Coast National Park.

SANParks is the leading conservation authority in all national parks around South Africa and responsible for protected land in 19 national parks. A transfrontier conservation area (TFCA) is a cross-border region.

The conservation status of the areas within a TFCA ranges from national parks, private game reserves and communal natural-resource management areas to hunting-concession areas. TFCAs allow tourists easy movement across international boundaries into adjoining conservation areas. The seven TFCAs are:

- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- Kavango-Zambezi
- Greater Mapungubwe
- Great Limpopo Transfrontier Park
- Lubombo TFCA
- Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier Conservation and Development Area.

South African Weather Service (SAWS)

The SAWS is an authoritative voice for weather and climate forecasting in South Africa and as a member of the World Meteorological Organization, it complies with international meteorological standards. As an Aviation Meteorological Authority, the SAWS is designated by the State to provide weather services to the aviation industry, marine and a range of other identified clients, and to fulfil a range of international obligations of the government. It provides two distinct services, namely public good services that are funded by government, and paid-for

commercial services. By mid-2023, the SAWS was in the process of automating and modernising its observations infrastructure. This includes upgrades to mitigate the effect load-shedding is having on its data collection process.

Increased collection and accuracy of data will ensure that the SAWS can warn the public of extreme weather events in good time, saving lives and livelihoods. The SAWS's countrywide observational network consists of:

- 243 automatic weather stations.
- 2 climate stations.
- 1 050 rainfall stations.
- 153 automatic rainfall stations.
- 23 sea surface temperature stations.
- 47 weather buoys in the South Atlantic and South Indian Ocean.
- 14 meteorological radar systems.
- 1 global atmosphere watch station at Cape Point.
- 2 dobson ozone spectrophotometre stations in Irene and Springbok. (A third expected to operate at Cape Point).
- 1 baseline surface radiation network station in De Aar.
- 13 solar radiation stations.
- 5 biometeorological stations.
- 24 lightning detection sensors (excluding one in Eswatini).
- 17 air quality measuring and monitoring stations.
- 11 upper-air sounding stations with Irene also conducting ozone soundings.

Awelani Community Conservation Area (CCA)

The Awelani CCA is a 1 800-hectare area set aside for conservation by the Mutele Community in Limpopo, including the development of tourism infrastructure. South Africa's biosphere reserves include:

- Vhembe, situated in the north-east of Limpopo, which includes the northern part of the Kruger National Park; the Makuleke Wetland, which is protected under the Ramsar Convention; the Soutpansberg and Blouberg biodiversity hotspots; and the Makgabeng Plateau.
- The Kogelberg Reserve on the country's southern coast is in the middle of the Cape Floral Region and home to different plant species, some of which are found only in this region.
- The Cape West Coast Biosphere Reserve starts in Cape Town in the southern suburb of Diep River and stretches up the west coast as far as the Berg River, encompassing parts of the Cape Floral Region. The reserve includes the Ramsar-protected Langebaan Lagoon as well as Dassen Island, which is home to several protected bird species.
- The Cape Winelands Biosphere Reserve includes a part of the Cape Floral Region, as well as the wine-growing region.
- The Biosphere Reserve, in the Waterberg in Limpopo is an important catchment area for the Limpopo Basin, with four large rivers originating within its borders – the Lephale, Mokolo, Matlabas and Magalakwena rivers.

- The Kruger-to-Canyons Biosphere Reserve stretches from the Kruger National Park to the Blyde River Canyon. It is an important conservation area as it covers three biomes.
- The Gouritz Cluster Biosphere Reserve is also recognised by the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) in terms of the Man and Biosphere Programme.

Areas of conservation

Protected areas

The National Protected Areas Expansion Strategy aims to achieve the cost-effective expansion of protected areas for improved ecosystem representation, ecological sustainability and resilience to climate change and safeguarding biodiversity-based jobs. The strategy extends to freshwater and marine components and is framed to ensure that the country contributes to its international obligations on the protection of conservation estates.

South Africa is home to more than nine million ha of protected areas network, which includes national parks, nature reserves and world heritage sites. These protected areas, among other things, serve as sites for conserving the country's ecosystems, protection of high biodiversity value and provision of ecosystem services.

Most of these protected areas are geographically located in rural areas, forming an integral system with rural communities whose livelihoods and cultures are closely dependent on.

Scientific reserves

Scientific reserves are sensitive and undisturbed areas managed for research, monitoring and the maintenance of genetic sources. These include Marion Island and the Prince Edward Islands near Antarctica. Access is limited to researchers and staff.

The quality of South African and international weather forecasts relies on the availability of data inputs from the Gough Island region. Gough Island is a volcanic island rising from the South Atlantic Ocean to heights of over 900 metres above sea level with an area of 91 km².

Wilderness areas

These areas are extensive, uninhabited and underdeveloped, and access is strictly controlled with no vehicles allowed. The highest management priority is the maintenance of the intrinsic wilderness character. Wilderness areas include the Cederberg Wilderness Area and Dassen Island in the Western Cape, and the Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area in the Eastern Cape.

Biomes

The nine major terrestrial biomes or habitat types in South Africa are divided into 70 veld types. The biomes are the Savanna, Nama-Karoo, Succulent Karoo,

Grassland, Fynbos, Forest, Albany Thicket, Desert and Indian Ocean Coastal Belt. The Fynbos Biome is one of only six floral kingdoms worldwide.

World Heritage sites

South Africa has 10 World Heritage sites proclaimed by UNESCO, namely:

- **Robben Island (Western Cape).** Robben Island was used at various times between the 17th and 20th centuries as a prison, a hospital for socially unacceptable groups and a military base. Its buildings, particularly those of the late 20th century such as the maximum-security prison for political prisoners, witness the triumph of democracy and freedom over oppression and racism. It is most famous for the incarceration of political prisoners, including former President Nelson Mandela, who was imprisoned for 18 of his 27 years in jail.
- **iSimangaliso Wetlands Park (KwaZulu-Natal).** It was formerly called the Greater St Lucia Wetland Park. The ongoing fluvial, marine and aeolian processes in the site have produced a variety of landforms, including coral reefs, long sandy beaches, coastal dunes, lake systems, swamps, and extensive reed and papyrus wetlands. The interplay of the park's environmental heterogeneity with major floods and coastal storms and a transitional geographic location between subtropical and tropical Africa has resulted in exceptional species diversity and ongoing speciation. The mosaic of landforms and habitat types creates breathtaking scenic vistas. The site contains critical habitats for a range of species from Africa's marine, wetland and savannah environments.
- **Cradle of Humankind (Gauteng).** The Taung Skull Fossil Site, part of the extension to the site inscribed in 1999, is the place where in 1924 the celebrated Taung Skull – a specimen of the species *Australopithecus africanus* – was found. Makapan Valley, also in the site, features in its many archaeological caves traces of human occupation and evolution dating back some 3.3 million years. The area contains essential elements that define the origin and evolution of humanity. Fossils found there have enabled the identification of several specimens of early hominids, more particularly of *Paranthropus*, dating back between 4.5 million and 2.5 million years, as well as evidence of the domestication of fire 1.8 million to one million years ago. It includes the hominid fossil sites at Swartkrans, Sterkfontein and Kromdraai.
- **Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park (KwaZulu-Natal).** The park has outstanding natural beauty, Africa's highest mountain range south of Kilimanjaro, and the largest and most concentrated series of rock art paintings in Africa. The site harbours endangered species such as the Cape vulture (*Gyps coprotheres*) and the bearded vulture (*Gypaetus barbatus*).
- **Mapungubwe Heritage Site (Limpopo).** Mapungubwe is an open, expansive savannah landscape at the confluence of the Limpopo and Shashe rivers. Mapungubwe developed into the largest kingdom in the sub-continent before it was abandoned in the 14th century. What survives are the

almost untouched remains of the palace sites and also the entire settlement area dependent upon them, as well as two earlier capital sites, the whole presenting an unrivalled picture of the development of social and political structures over some 400 years.

- **Cape Floral Kingdom (Western Cape).** It is one of the world's great centres of terrestrial biodiversity. The extended property includes national parks, nature reserves, wilderness areas, State forests and mountain catchment areas. These elements add a significant number of endemic species associated with the Fynbos vegetation, a fine-leaved sclerophyllic shrubland adapted to both a Mediterranean climate and periodic fires, which is unique to the Cape Floral Region.
- **Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape (Northern Cape).** The 160 000 ha of dramatic mountainous desert constitutes a cultural landscape.
- **Vredefort Dome (Gauteng).** This is a representative part of a larger meteorite impact structure or astrobleme. Dating back to over two million years, it is the oldest astrobleme yet found on Earth. With a radius of 190 km, it is also the largest and the most deeply eroded. Vredefort Dome bears witness to the world's greatest known single energy release event, which had devastating global effects including, according to some scientists, major evolutionary changes. It provides critical evidence of the Earth's geological history and is crucial to understanding of the evolution of the planet. Despite the importance of impact sites to the planet's history, geological activity on the Earth's surface *has led to the disappearance of evidence from most of them, and Vredefort is the only example to provide a full geological profile of an astrobleme below the crater floor.*
- **ǀKhomani Cultural Landscape.** (Located at the border with Botswana and Namibia in the northern part of the country, coinciding with the Kalahari Gemsbok National). The large expanse of sand contains evidence of human occupation from the Stone Age to the present and is associated with the culture of the formerly nomadic ǀKhomani San people and the strategies that allowed them to adapt to harsh desert conditions. They developed a specific ethnobotanical knowledge, cultural practices and a worldview related to the geographical features of their environment. The ǀKhomani Cultural Landscape bears testimony to the way of life that prevailed in the region and shaped the site over thousands of years.
- **Makhonjwa Mountains, also known as the Barberton Greenstone Belt (Mpumalanga).** One of the world's oldest geological structures, the Makhonjwa Mountains in Barberton, Mpumalanga represent the best-preserved succession of volcanic and sedimentary rock dating back 3.6 to 3.25 billion years, when the first continents were starting to form on the primitive Earth. It features meteorite impact fallback breccias resulting from the impact of meteorites formed just after the Great Bombardment (over 4.6 to 3.8 billion years ago). In addition to sites inscribed on the World Heritage list, member states can maintain a list of tentative sites that they may consider

for nomination. Nominations for the World Heritage list are only accepted if the site was previously listed on the tentative list.

South Africa had listed the following properties on its tentative list:

- Succulent Karoo Protected Areas
- Liberation Heritage Route
- Early Farmsteads of the Cape Winelands
- The Emergence of Modern Humans: The Pleistocene occupation sites of South Africa
- Human Rights, Liberation Struggle and Reconciliation: Nelson Mandela Legacy Sites.

Wetlands

Wetlands support a range of specialised plant, insect and mammal life and also supply food, grazing, building and craft material to people. They are able to improve water quality, reduce flood impacts, control erosion and sustain river flows.

A Ramsar site is a wetland site designated to be of international importance under the Ramsar Convention, also known as 'The Convention on Wetlands', an intergovernmental environmental treaty established by UNESCO on 2 February 1971 in Ramsar, Iran.

It came into force from 1975 and provides for national action and international cooperation regarding the conservation of wetlands and wise sustainable use of their resources. Each year on 2 February is World Wetlands Day to mark the date of the adoption of the Convention on Wetlands in 1971. South Africa's 29 Ramsar wetland sites are:

- Seekoeivlei Nature Reserve (Free State)
- Barberspan (North West)
- Blesbokspruit (Gauteng)
- De Hoop Vlei (Western Cape)
- De Mond (Western Cape)
- iSimangaliso (KwaZulu-Natal)
- Kosi Bay (KwaZulu-Natal)
- Langebaan (Western Cape)
- Lake Sibaya (KwaZulu-Natal)
- Makuleke (Limpopo)
- Ndumo Game Reserve (KwaZulu-Natal)
- Ntsikeni Nature Reserve (KwaZulu-Natal)
- Nylsvley Nature Reserve (Limpopo)
- Orange River Mouth (Northern Cape)
- Prince Edward Islands in Antarctica
- Seekoeivlei
- St Lucia
- Turtle beaches and coral reefs of Tongaland
- Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park

- Verlorenvlei Nature Reserve (Western Cape)
- Wilderness Lakes (Western Cape)
- Dyer, Geyser and Dassen islands (Western Cape)
- Kgaswane Mountain Reserve (North West).
- Bot-Kleinmond Estuarine System (Western Cap)

Marine protected areas (MPAs)

Government shares joint responsibility for South Africa's MPAs with SANParks and Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife. South Africa's MPAs include the:

- Aliwal Shoal, KwaZulu-Natal
- Betty's Bay, Western Cape
- Bird Island, Eastern Cape
- De Hoop, Western Cape
- Dwesa-Cwebe, Eastern Cape
- False Bay, Western Cape
- Goukamma, Western Cape
- Hluleka, Eastern Cape
- iSimangaliso, KwaZulu-Natal
- Langebaan Lagoon, Sixteen Mile Beach, Malgas Island, Marcus Island, Jutten Island, Western Cape
- Pondoland, Eastern Cape.
- Robberg, Western Cape
- Sardinia Bay, Eastern Cape
- Stilbaai, Western Cape
- Table Mountain, Western Cape
- Trafalgar, KwaZulu-Natal
- Tsitsikamma, Western Cape.

Zoological gardens

By mid-2023, the 85-hectare National Zoological Gardens (NZG), also known as the Pretoria Zoo, housed 3 117 specimens of 209 mammal species, 1 358 specimens of 202 bird species, 3 871 specimens of 190 fish species, 388 specimens of four invertebrate species, 309 specimens of 93 reptile species, and 44 specimens of 7 amphibian species.

The NZG is the largest zoo in the country and the only one with national status. More than 600 000 people visit the Zoo annually. The total length of the walkways in the Zoo in Pretoria is approximately six kilometres.

The highly accredited tourism site, World Atlas, published an article rating the Pretoria Zoo, as one of the 10 best ranked zoos in the world, competing with the well-known Bronx Zoo in New York. An Aquarium and Reptile Park also form part of the Zoo facility in Pretoria.

The Aquarium is the largest inland marine aquarium in the country. The third largest collection of exotic trees can be found at the Zoo. The NZG has since been incorporated into the SANBI.

As part of a new repositioning strategy, the zoo will be modernised and its role in species conservation, research, biodiversity education and public engagement, tourism and recreation enhanced. Some of the government and private venues include the following:

- Joburg Zoo in Johannesburg, which was founded in 1904, covers 55 ha of land and houses over 320 species of animals.
- Mitchell Park Zoo in Durban, which was named after Sir Charles Bullen Hugh Mitchell, is the country's second oldest zoo after the NZG in Pretoria.
- East London Zoo is located in the Queens Park Zoological Gardens in East London, Eastern Cape. It is financed and managed by the Buffalo City Metropolitan Municipality. Apart from the animals, the zoo and gardens contain a treasure trove of flora and fauna, some of which is only found in the Eastern Cape.
- Birds of Eden is the world's largest free flight aviary and bird sanctuary, located near Plettenberg Bay in the Western Cape, South Africa. Its unique two-hectare dome (the world's largest) spans over a gorge of indigenous forest. It is home to over 3 500 birds from over 220 species, with the main focus being African birds.
- Umgeni River Bird Park in Durban, in KwaZulu-Natal, is situated in 3.5 ha of lush tropical landscaping and houses an ever-increasing collection of more than 800 birds from 200 species.
- World of Birds is the largest bird park in Africa and one of the few large bird parks in the world. Over 3 000 birds (and small animals) of 400 different species are uniquely presented in more than 100 spacious landscaped walk through aviaries, allowing you the most intimate closeness with nature.
- The Bushbabies and Monkey Sanctuary, situated in Hartbeespoort Dam provides an environment where monkeys (primates) can be given their freedom in a natural environment. The sanctuary situated in one of the many kloofs (gorges) of the Magaliesberg mountain range provides the perfect environment for Monkeys from around the world.

Conservation centres

The NZG of South Africa is responsible for the management of the Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre. The centre covers an area of 1334 hectares, comprising of a zoo-like environment, breeding camps and a free ranging area, all accommodating a large variety of African species as well as species from other continents..

The Ann van Dyk Cheetah Centre, formerly known as the De Wildt Cheetah Centre, is a breeding sanctuary for cheetahs and other endangered animals situated in Hartbeespoort. Other creatures being housed at the centre include African wild dogs, brown hyenas, servals, suni antelopes, riverine rabbits and a population of vultures.

The Hoedspruit Endangered Species Centre (HESC) in Limpopo focuses on the breeding and conservation of a variety of animal species, including African

wild cat, ground hornbill, sable antelope, lion, cheetah and rhino. The HESC works closely with advisory committees of the Pretoria Zoo and the University of Pretoria.

Aquariums and oceanariums

There are aquariums in Pretoria, Gqeberha (formerly Port Elizabeth), Cape Town, Durban and East London. The Aquarium and Reptile Park of the NZG of South Africa in Pretoria is the largest inland aquarium in Africa.

The Gqeberha Oceanarium's exhibits include an underwater observation area, a dolphin research centre, various smaller tanks containing 40 different species of bony fish and two larger tanks that display sharks and stingrays.

Officially opened on 2 December 1931, the East London Aquarium is the oldest public aquarium in Southern Africa. At the Two Oceans Aquarium situated at the Victoria and Alfred Waterfront, Cape Town, more than 3 000 specimens represent some 300 species of fish, invertebrates, mammals, birds and plants supported by the waters along the Cape coast. The aquarium at uShaka Marine World in Durban incorporates both fresh and seawater species.

Snake and reptile parks

The Bayworld Snake Park in Gqeberha is home to a wide variety of South African and foreign reptiles. The Aquarium and Reptile Park at the NZG in Pretoria also houses a wide variety of reptile species from all over the world. The Hartbeespoort Dam Snake and Animal Park near Pretoria features one of the finest reptile collections in southern Africa.

The Pure Venom Reptile Farm is one of the largest of South Africa's reptile parks. It is situated inland from Shelly Beach, on KwaZulu-Natal's South Coast.

The Croc River Enviro Park in Nelspruit, Mpumalanga is the largest facility of its type in Africa. Khamai Reptile Centre primarily aims to conserve and breed endangered reptiles. Located outside Hoedspruit, it offers a close-up look at many local as well as exotic snakes, crocodiles and lizards.

The Croc City Crocodile and Reptile Park breeds crocodiles on a farm in Nietgedacht, Chartwell and other resident reptiles.

Private sector involvement

More than 400 organisations in South Africa concentrate on conservation, wildlife and the general environment, while more than 30 botanical and horticultural organisations concentrate on the conservation of the country's fauna and flora.

Biodiversity

South Africa is home to some 24 000 species, around 7% of the world's vertebrate species, and 5,5% of the world's known insect species (only about half of the latter have been described). In terms of the number of endemic species of mammals, birds, reptiles and amphibians found in South Africa.

Marine biodiversity is also high, with more than 11 000 species found in South

African waters, which is about 15% of global species. More than 25% of these species (or 3 496 species) are endemic to South Africa, many of which are threatened, especially in river ecosystems (82%) and estuaries (77%).

Poaching

Fighting poaching, particularly rhino poaching in the Kruger National Park and abalone poaching in Western Cape, remains a top priority. Strategies to combat wildlife crime involve the technological improvement of early warning systems and risk assessments, better coordination with law-enforcement agencies, and the deployment of additional rangers.

Recycling

The Waste Management Bureau, which was established in 2016 in terms of the National Environmental Management: Waste Management Act of 2014, is tasked with promoting and facilitating the minimisation, reuse, recycling and recovery of waste by providing specialist advice and support for the development of integrated waste management plans for industry and municipalities.

The bureau is also tasked with monitoring the implementation of industry waste management plans, and managing the disbursement of revenue generated from charges for waste management. The National Regulator for Compulsory Specifications also receives funding to implement compulsory specifications for plastic bags.

In 2023, the DFFE partnered with the UN Environmental Programme on World Environment Day to raise public awareness about the Triple Planetary crises of climate change, biodiversity loss and pollution by observing World Environment Day under the theme “Beat Plastic Pollution”.

Climate change

Severe weather events, a phenomena associated with global warming, are a reminder that climate change is already part of our lived reality.

The Sixth Assessment report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change says that by 2030, 50% of the world’s population will live in coastal areas that are exposed to floods, storms and tsunamis intensifying the vulnerability of communities living in conditions of poverty.

In the face of this reality, the importance of early warning systems and effective rapid response to disasters cannot be over emphasised. Over the next three years, the DFFE will be investing over R100 million to upgrade and modernise weather stations to bring radar and forecasting in line with modern very short-term prediction standards.

Green economy

Through South Africa’s Green Economy Strategy, the DFFE continues to promote equitable, inclusive and sustainable economic growth and social development.

The strategy has eight key pillars, namely:

- Green buildings and the built environment;
- Sustainable transport and infrastructure;
- Clean energy and energy efficiency;
- Natural resource conservation and management;
- Sustainable waste management;
- Water management;
- Sustainable consumption and production; and
- Agriculture food production and forestry.

Forestry

In terms of Forestry South Africa, which represents the forestry industry, the South African forestry landscape is a tapestry of commercial timber plantations – or tree farms – interwoven by natural spaces of unplanted land to enhance and conserve biodiversity, grasslands, wetlands and indigenous forests.

With some 80% of the country's timber plantations certified by the Forest Stewardship Council, South Africa has one of highest degree of forest certification in the world. South Africans can be proud of their Forestry Industry as one that is environmentally, socially and economically responsible.

National Arbor Week and Month

National Arbor Week, which is celebrated annually in September, serves to promote awareness for the need to plant and maintain indigenous trees throughout South Africa. The theme for 2023 was “Forests and Health”, as adopted by the United Nations Collaborative Partnerships on Forests.

The 2023 theme aimed to highlight how forestry and tree planting play key roles in creating sustainable healthy communities through health benefits derived in forests through nutritious foods, medicine, fresh air, clean water, and places for recreation.

The following were selected as Trees of the Year for 2023:

- ***Leucadendron argenteum* or Silver tree:** The Silver tree is naturally confined in the Western Cape, in the city of Cape Town, and on the slopes of Table Mountain. The silver tree is widely cultivated as an ornamental garden specimen. Its beautiful silver foliage is used in floristry. The leaves have also long been collected, pressed, and dried for decoration or as a souvenir. The dried female cones are decorative and the small silver balls of the dried male flower heads are used in dried floral arts and crafts.
- ***Buddleja saligna* or False olive:** The False olive is found in all provinces in South Africa and is common near Johannesburg and Pretoria. It can grow in poor soils, on hot mountainsides, either away from or close to water and is both cold and drought resistant. The False olive can be used for traditional medicine purposes; leaves to treat colds and coughs, and roots used as a purgative. It is also used to make small pieces of furniture and fence posts as

well as assegai handles.

- ***Bolusanthus speciosus* or Tree wisteria:** The Tree wisteria, being a protected tree in South Africa, wild specimens may not be removed, cut down or damaged. Flowering time is from August to January. It is widespread in wooded grasslands of the Limpopo, Mpumalanga, Eswatini and KwaZulu-Natal. The roots are used medicinally to alleviate stomach problems and the inner bark used to treat abdominal cramps. The wood makes excellent furniture.

Woodlands

Woodlands include those types ranging from wooded grasslands (between 5% and 10% tree canopy cover) to dense thickets (areas with over 75% tree canopy cover but which do not meet the other criteria required to be defined as natural forest).

The woodland, also known as savannas, constitute a forest resource of major importance in South Africa. Several protected tree species of the savanna, such as camel thorn and leadwood, contribute substantially to the lucrative braai wood market, and guidelines have been set for licensing processes to assist with the control of their use. Kathu Forest in the Northern Cape is the first woodland area to be declared protected woodland under the National Forests Act of 1998.

The woodlands are a valuable source of fuel, building material, craft timber and a variety of nontimber products. These include fruit, fodder, medicinal compounds, honey, meat and mushrooms. They form the backbone of the livelihoods of millions of people. The wood processing sector comprises board manufacturers and manufacturers of wood-based products.

Fisheries

The fishing sector remains a significant contributor to food security and the economy. Stabilising the sub-sector through the allocation of longer-term fishing rights is critical to attracting investment into the industry.

The transformation of the South African fishing industry is a constitutional and legislative imperative. The Fishing Rights Allocation Process and the management of commercial fishing rights are an important site for industry transformation.

On 15 November 2023, the DFFE announced the final outcome of the allocation of 15-year fishing rights to small-scale fishers in the Western Cape. This marked the final province where these rights have been granted for the first time in South Africa's history.

In the lead-up to fishing rights allocation, the department worked with community-based organisations and fishing communities to register cooperatives and identify suitable species and fishing areas to be used by the cooperatives.

By the end of 2023, the department was in the process of developing a sustainable and financially viable basket of species for the small-scale sector.

Some of the species that have been granted to date include commercial traditional line-fish species, west coast rock lobster, seaweed, bait species,

abalone aquaculture ranching sites, net-fish species, white mussels, oysters and hake handline.

Aquaculture

South Africa is a maritime nation with jurisdiction over one of the largest exclusive economic zones in the world. Its oceans represent a significant asset for current and future generations, with enormous economic potential, in aquaculture, bioprospecting, marine ecotourism, extractive industries, and less obvious benefits of healthy ecosystem services such as climate regulation, carbon storage and waste absorption.

The aquaculture subsector can be divided into two main categories:

- **Freshwater aquaculture** consists mainly of freshwater species such as rainbow trout, brown trout, Koi carp, crocodiles, ornamental fish, African catfish, Mozambique and Nile tilapia, Marron and waterblommetjies.
- **Marine aquaculture** consists of abalone, white prawns, oysters, seaweeds, Spanish & Brown mussels, Dusky & Silver Kob; yellow tail, Atlantic salmon, clownfish, White Margined Sole, West & East coast rock lobster, scallop and blood worms.



HEALTH

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO **SOUTH AFRICA**

2022/23

Health

The Department of Health (DoH) derives its mandate from the National Health Act of 2003, which requires that the department provides a framework for a structured and uniform health system for South Africa and sets out the responsibilities of the three levels of government in the provision of health services.

Its mission is to improve health by preventing illness and disease, and promoting healthy lifestyles. It aims to consistently improve the healthcare delivery system by focusing on access, equity, efficiency, quality and sustainability.

The department's focus over the medium term was on preventing and treating communicable and non-communicable diseases (NCDs), overseeing primary healthcare (PHC) services, strengthening the health system, supporting tertiary healthcare services, improving health infrastructure, and developing human resources for the health sector.

Preventing and treating communicable and NCDs

South Africa has a high burden of communicable and NCDs, many of which require dedicated and targeted prevention and treatment programmes. Funds have been allocated for the prevention and treatment of HIV and tuberculosis (TB). These funds are expected to ensure that a targeted seven million people per year receive antiretroviral treatment by 2025/26.

The National Strategic Plan (NSP) for the Prevention and Control of NCDs and the roll-out of the National NCD Campaign were expected to accelerate the country's response to the challenges of NCDs. The National NCD Campaign aims to strengthen the district's community-based response in line with the Integrated People Centred Health Service approach on the prevention and control of NCDs.

The NSP endeavours to lay a foundation for action through a cascading strategy, similar to the 90-90-90 approach for HIV and AIDS, and TB. This strategy was initially designed to address the burden of diabetes and hypertension and will be refined and updated progressively to include other NCDs.

The proposed 90-60-50 cascade for diabetes and hypertension are the first steps to improving early detection and treatment of NCDs as follows:

- 90% of all people over 18 will know whether or not they have raised blood pressure and/or raised blood glucose;
- 60% of people with raised blood pressure or blood glucose will receive intervention; and
- 50% of people receiving interventions will be controlled.

The DoH aimed to have 25 million people screened annually for high blood pressure and elevated blood glucose respectively, to ensure ongoing surveillance and early disease detection and diagnosis.

The department has made significant strides with the fight against HIV and AIDS, TB and Sexually Transmitted Infections (STIs). It had, in terms of the NSP for HIV, TB and STIs (2023 to 2028), developed an acceleration plan which identified 100 facilities in 17 districts in all nine provinces with a high burden of HIV and AIDS.

By focusing on these areas, the department aimed to reach 95-95-95 by 2025 and the elimination of HIV and AIDS as a health threat by 2030. Since the new infection of young people, especially adolescent girls and young women, is a major challenge in South Africa, the DoH aims to reduce HIV and STIs for youth aged 15-24 years by 40% by 2025 through National Youth HIV Prevention Strategy and Campaign called Zikhala Kanjani.

To increase the efficacy and viral suppression, the department has made the drug Tenofovir, Lamivudine and Dolutegravir or TLD more accessible for adults and adolescents, and a number of new, safer and effective treatments have also been added.

A very effective treatment for children called Paediatric Dolutegravir (DTG) has been approved by the South African Health Products Regulatory Authority (SAHPRA). All these new medicines are expected to increase safety and efficacy.

TB remains a twin infectious disease and cause of mortality in the world and in South Africa. TB screening is done at health facilities when clients come for other services. The new shorter treatments will see Drug Resistant TB treatment moving from nine months from a previous two years before 2018 to a new six months treatment. Treatment of children with drug-sensitive TB will reduce from six months to four months.

Overseeing PHC services

From 1 April 2023, the DoH's port health services function was shifted from PHC programme to the Border Management Authority, a newly established entity of the Department of Home Affairs. This involves shifting an estimated 295 employees from the programme to the authority.

The department will continue to provide policy guidance to the authority for port health services. Funds have been over the medium term to fund the prevention and treatment of malaria, human papillomavirus and outreach services provided by community health workers.

Strengthening the health system and planning for National Health Insurance (NHI)

The NHI Bill is being considered by Parliament. If enacted, it will have considerable implications for how healthcare in South Africa is funded and organised. An amount of R2.2 billion over the medium term is allocated to the direct NHI grant for provincial health departments to contract health professionals and healthcare services, including PHC doctors, oncology services and mental health services.

The DoH also manages the NHI indirect grant, which has three components and a budget of R6.9 billion over the medium term. The non-personal services component of R2 billion over the next three years supports activities aimed at strengthening the health system, such as health information systems, quality improvement initiatives and the dispensing and distribution of chronic medicines.

Supporting tertiary healthcare services

Funds have been allocated to subsidise highly specialised services at the country's 31 tertiary and central hospitals. These hospitals are generally in urban areas and are unequally distributed across provinces, resulting in a large number of referrals of patients from rural provinces to provinces with greater tertiary services capacity.

The grant aims to compensate these provinces for providing hospital care and has a developmental allocation earmarked to establish tertiary services in provinces with limited access to them. For example, oncology services are planned to be rolled out in Mpumalanga and Limpopo to reduce referrals to Gauteng.

Improving health infrastructure

South Africa's public health infrastructure has many shortcomings, including old and often poorly maintained health facilities in need of repair, refurbishment and sometimes replacement. There is also a need to invest in new infrastructure where there are gaps in service delivery because of historical inequities or demographic changes. By mid-2023, construction of the Limpopo Central Hospital in Polokwane, which will be the first central hospital in the province, was underway.

Developing human resources for the health sector

Compared to other middle-income countries, South Africa has a shortage of medical doctors and specialists. To improve the country's doctor-to-patient ratio, government has increased the number of doctors trained at domestic medical schools through a combination of bursary schemes that target students from underprivileged areas, and has increased the general intake at medical schools.

As a supplementary measure, government has also funded training for South African doctors in other countries such as Cuba. As part of the final stages of their training, medical students must complete statutory internships and community service in the public sector.

In line with the increased training, the number of medical interns appointed by provinces has increased from 1 500 in 2015 to 2 625 in 2022, and community service doctors from 1 322 to 2 369 over the same period.

Health systems

PHC is at the centre of improving access to and quality of health services. The drive towards all PHC facilities attaining Ideal Clinic status was derailed by the COVID-19 pandemic but is gaining momentum again. In the 2023/24 financial year, the DoH expect 200 more PHCs to attain ideal status, bringing the number to 2 400.

To improve Patient Records management, the Health Patient Registration System has been rolled out in 3 211 public health facilities, out of which 267 PHCs and 2 870 are clinics and 74 hospitals. Building on the learnings from

the development and roll-out of the Electronic Vaccination Data System, the department was in 2023 expected to introduce the first module of the Electronics Health Records focusing on HIV and TB.

Emergency medical services (EMS) is an important component of PHC and the department was assessing all provinces for compliance with EMS regulations. The recently approved NSP for the Prevention and Control of NCDs and the roll of the National NCD Campaign will accelerate the country's response to the challenges of NCDs.

The National NCDs Campaign has been established to strengthen the district's community-based response in line with the Integrated People Centred Health Service approach on the prevention and control of NCDs.

The department is participating in the Cluster: Social Protection, Community and Human Development, which coordinates implementation of cross cutting focus areas that affect women, youth and persons with disabilities. One of the outcomes is to increase access to development opportunities for children, youth and parents/guardians including access to menstrual health and hygiene for all women and girls.

Central Chronic Medication Dispensing and Distribution (CCMDD)

The DoH's flagship programme, the CCMDD or fondly called by patients as "Dablap meds", meaning short cut, creates an alternative access to chronic medication. Now that people live longer, the burden of costly long-term chronic conditions and preventable illnesses that require multiple complex interventions over many years continues to grow. This is a positive impact informing one of the overarching goals of the National Development Plan, which focuses on raising the life expectancy of South Africans to at least 70 years by 2030.

Mental health

The DoH plans to do more to increase public knowledge on mental health issues including early signs of mental illness, avoiding preventable risk factors, early help seeking behaviour for mental illness symptoms and where people should go for help and treatment.

Unlike other disciplines that require mostly sophisticated technologies to diagnose and treat illnesses, mental health require mostly human resources to diagnose, care, treat and rehabilitate mental illnesses. There is a need to continuously upskill health professionals to ensure that they have the required capacity for early identification and treatment of mental illnesses.

By mid-2023, a total of 2 393 medical doctors and professional nurses had been trained on basic clinical mental health skills.

The department had motivated for funds from National Treasury to contract private mental healthcare professionals to complement the already existing staff and render mental health services at PHC.

Provinces have used this indirect grant to contract psychiatrists, psychologists, occupational therapists, social workers and registered counsellors to render

mental health services at PHC. The contracted clinical psychologists and psychiatrists also conduct forensic mental observations of accused referred by the courts in terms of the Criminal Procedures Act of 1977.

Mental health content has been integrated into the curriculum of community healthcare workers, to assist in identifying and referring those that need mental health services as they visit households.

The DoH has integrated mental health into the general health services environment in compliance to international standards in the area of mental health. Among others are the following:

- All PHC facilities in the country now render mental health services in line with the available capacity.
- By mid-2023, a total of 40 out of the 336 hospitals have a mental health unit attached. Out of the 24 specialised psychiatric hospitals, 14 are designated to admit state patients and 10 have a capacity to conduct forensic mental observations.

The department aimed to continue strengthening its collaboration with the Department of Correctional Services, Department of Justice and Constitutional Development, South African Police Service and the National Prosecuting Authority to improve outcomes in the area of forensic mental health.

It aimed to continue strengthening community based mental health services by licensing and providing subsidies to these facilities which are mostly run by the civil-society organisations. By mid-2023, there were 297 residential and 133 day care community-based mental health facilities that are licensed and subsidised by provincial departments of health in terms of Regulation 43 of the General Regulations of the Mental Health Care Act of 2002, as amended.

Life expectancy and population

According to Statistics South Africa's Census 2022, the population of South Africa increased from 51,7 million in 2011 to more than 62 million in 2022; a growth rate of 1,8% in the intercensal period. Females constituted 51,5% of the total population, while 48,5% were males. Gauteng and KwaZulu-Natal had the highest populations at 15 million and 12,4 million respectively, while the Northern Cape had the smallest (1,3 million).

Black Africans remain the dominant population group at 81,4%, followed by the coloured population at 8,2%. The white population percentage declined to 7,3% in 2022 from 8,9% observed in 2011, while that for Indians/Asians increased slightly from 2,5% in 2011 to 2,7% in 2022. The median age increased to 28 years from 25 years in 2011, suggesting a consistent increase over time and an overall increase of three years.

In 2022, Gauteng recorded the highest population (15 099 422) followed by KwaZulu-Natal (12 423 907) in 2022, while Northern Cape (1 355 946) and Free State (2 964 412) reported the lowest population sizes among the provinces.

Gauteng is the only province where the proportion of females has been consistently below 50% since 1996. Limpopo (52,8%) and Eastern Cape (52,6%)

had the highest proportion of females, more than the other seven provinces and the national percentage (51,5%). The black African population remains the biggest population group across all provinces since 1996. The black African population was highest in Gauteng (12 765 312) and KwaZulu-Natal (10 535 830), and lowest in the Northern Cape province (679 383).

The highest number of the coloured population was in the Western Cape over time; proportionally, they also remained the highest in the Western Cape at 42% in 2022, although they declined from 56% in 1996.

The largest concentration of the white population group was recorded in Gauteng (1 509 800) followed by the Western Cape (1 217 807) in 2022. However, the proportion of the white population declined gradually within each province over time; for instance, the white population constituted 22% of the population in Gauteng in 1996, but declined to only 10% in that province in 2022. It was 21,4% of the Western Cape population in 1996 and declined to just above 16% of the total population in that province in 2022.

The total number of the Indian/Asian population recorded in 2022 was 1 697 505; provincially, the highest number of the Indian/Asian population remains in KwaZulu-Natal (1 157 542) followed by Gauteng (329 736). This population group remained steady within these two provinces at just below 10% in KwaZulu-Natal and only 2% of the Gauteng population.

National Health Insurance

The NHI aims to ensure that all citizens and residents of South Africa, irrespective of socio-economic status, have access to good-quality health services provided by both the public and private sectors, thereby eradicating financial barriers to healthcare access. The NDP envisions a health system that works for everyone, produces positive health outcomes and is accessible to all.

By 2030, the NDP expects South Africa to have, among other things, raised the life expectancy of South Africans to at least 70 years; produced a generation of under-20s that is largely free of HIV; achieved an IMR of less than 20 deaths per thousand live births, including an U5MR of less than 30 per thousand; achieved a significant shift in equity, efficiency and quality of health service provision.

Potential benefits from the NHI Fund would include:

- treatment for schoolchildren with physical barriers to learning such as eyesight, hearing, speech and oral health;
- free ante-natal care in the form of eight visits to a doctor to each of the 1,2 million women who fall pregnant annually. Family planning, breast and cervical cancer screening and where appropriate, treatment, will be provided;
- better services for mental health users, such as screening; and
- assistive devices for the elderly like spectacles, hearing aids and wheelchairs.

Medical schemes

By August 2023, there were over 71 registered medical schemes in South Africa, with over eight million beneficiaries. There were also 32 administrators, R233

billion in member contributions, 43 managed-care organisations, 7 567 accredited healthcare brokers and 2 185 accredited healthcare brokerages.

Health entities:

- The **National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS)** was established in terms of the NHLS Act of 2000, and provides pathology services for the majority of the South African population through its 233 laboratories across the country. This includes forensic chemistry laboratory services, which the service took over from the department in 2022/23. The service also houses the National Institute for Communicable Diseases and the National Institute for Occupational Health.
- The **South African Medical Research Council's (SAMRC)** mandate in terms of the SAMRC Act of 1991 is to promote the improvement of the health and quality of life of the population through research, development and technology transfer. In line with this mandate, the council conducts and funds relevant and responsive health research, capacity development, innovation and research translation. Over the medium-term period, the council aims to accept or publish about 1 900 journal articles, books and book chapters by authors affiliated with and/or funded by it.
- The **National Institute for Communicable Diseases** is responsible for disease surveillance, specialised diagnostic services, outbreak response, public health research and capacity building. The primary responsibility of the National Institute for Occupational Health is to develop and support occupational health initiatives to improve and maintain the health of the South African workforce.
- The **Mines and Works Compensation Fund** was established in terms of the Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works Act of 1973. It is not yet listed as a public entity and the administration of the fund is done by the department, but legislation is being prepared to formally establish it as a schedule 3A public entity. The act mandates the fund to collect levies from controlled mines and works; compensate workers, former workers and the dependants of deceased workers in controlled mines and works who have developed occupational diseases in their cardiorespiratory organs; and reimburse workers for any loss of earnings while being treated for TB.
- The **Council for Medical Schemes** was established in terms of the Medical Schemes Act of 1998 as the regulatory authority responsible for overseeing the medical schemes industry in South Africa. Section 7 of the Act sets out the functions of the council, which include protecting the interests of medical scheme beneficiaries, controlling and coordinating the functioning of medical schemes, collecting and disseminating information about private

healthcare, and advising the Minister of Health on any matter concerning medical schemes.

The council plays a significant role in supporting the department and coordinating the medical industry's efforts towards realising universal health coverage. Over the medium-term period, the council aimed to complete a review of the prescribed minimum benefits that all medical schemes must cover, promote the consolidation of options and medical schemes, and support presidential health compact activities related to the standardisation of healthcare technology, infrastructure and architecture.

- The **Office of Health Standards Compliance** was established in terms of the National Health Amendment Act of 2013 to promote and protect the health and safety of the users of health services. It is mandated to monitor and enforce the compliance of health establishments with the norms and standards prescribed by the Minister of Health in relation to the national health system; and ensure the consideration, investigation and disposal of complaints relating to noncompliance with prescribed norms and standards in a procedurally fair, economical and expeditious manner. In an effort to strengthen the quality of healthcare delivery, the office is expected to increase the number of health establishments it inspects and certifies for compliance with norms and standards.
- The **SAHPRA** derives its mandate from the National Health Act of 2003 and the Medicines and Related Substances Act of 1965. The authority's key focus over the medium term will be on registering medicines and medical devices to support public health needs; licensing medicine and medical device manufacturers and importers; authorising, monitoring and evaluating clinical trials; and managing the safety, quality, efficacy and performance of health products throughout their life cycles. To improve efficiency and enable access to medicines to be rapidly scaled up by improving timelines for scientific evaluation and clinical trials, the authority plans to upskill its personnel through talent management and recruit expertise in core areas.



Human Settlements

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
SOUTH AFRICA

2022/23

Human Settlements

The Department of Human Settlements (DHS) is mandated, in terms of Section 26 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 and Section 3 of the Housing Act of 1997, to establish and facilitate a sustainable national housing development process in collaboration with provinces and municipalities.

In fulfilling its mandate, the department determines national policy and norms and standards for the development of housing and human settlements, prescribes national housing delivery goals and oversees provincial and municipal performance outcomes against national targets. To further ensure an effective housing development process, the department funds, capacitates and supports provinces and municipalities in the implementation of human settlements projects.

Over the medium term, the department planned to continue focusing on developing integrated human settlements; upgrading informal settlements; and creating an enabling environment for affordable housing by continually reviewing policy and implementation programmes, and strengthening support to provinces and municipalities to implement human settlements programmes.

Policy changes

Effective from 1 April 2023, the DHS announced the beginning of policy changes to be implemented on all new projects. These changes are aimed at responding to the economic changes, especially the rising cost of living, energy poverty and security needs for the vulnerable.

All subsidised houses will now be provided with solar panels and rainwater harvesting devices, where necessary, and for persons with disabilities, the houses will be fitted with burglar bars.

Because of increasing material costs, the department has increased the subsidy quantum by 29.7% for the 2023/24 financial year. The adjustment aims to speed up the pace of delivery and ensure that the quality of houses provided to beneficiaries does not deteriorate.

The DHS is committed to ensuring that all deserving military veterans are adequately housed and that the process is fast-tracked to ensure that these heroes and heroines receive the recognition that they deserve.

Effective from April 2023, in real terms, the housing programmes were adjusted as follows:

- Breaking New Ground (BNG) services and top structure – R286 364
- House for persons with disabilities – R307 166
- Military veterans house – R348 069
- First Home Finance – R169 265
- Social housing – R460 984.

Developing integrated human settlements

One of the department's objectives is to create inclusive communities within an improved spatial landscape. As such, the department planned to finalise 11 integrated plans in priority development areas that are intended to advance

spatial transformation and deliver integrated human settlements projects. The medium-term target was to deliver 180 000 fully subsidised houses and issue 388 104 title deeds to beneficiaries from low-income households.

The Lufhereng integrated urban development project in Johannesburg, a mixed-use residential housing development, aims to promote spatial integration and provide affordable rental housing units; and the Avoca Node project, which aims to create an enabling environment for private sector-led housing developments, is in the eThekweni Municipality.

Upgrading informal settlements

The department assists provinces and municipalities with comprehensive planning for the upgrading of informal settlements. This involves providing secure tenure, safe and reliable water and sanitation and adequate access to social services.

Related work is completed in phases, with phases 1 to 3 comprising the provision of secure tenure and basic services such as water, sanitation, lighting and refuse removal. Community participation in the upgrading process is a key pillar in the programme as beneficiaries are encouraged to find adequate upgrading solutions that are specific to their communities.

A targeted 900 informal settlements across the country will be upgraded to phase 3. Over the period ahead, the department was expected to ensure that provinces and municipalities deliver 60 000 serviced sites per year through the National Upgrading Support Programme. The department intended to hire consultants to augment capacity for the upgrading of informal settlements and the provision of affordable rental housing.

Facilitating affordable housing

Affordable housing broadly constitutes the provision of rental and social housing programmes, and instruments to provide housing finance to traditionally unserved segments of the population. These are critical components in the creation of a functional residential property market.

To this end, the department aims to increase the supply of rental and social housing stock, and assist low-income and middle-income households that earn above the qualifying threshold to receive state-subsidised housing but below the threshold to secure a home loan. Accordingly, the department plans to build 10 800 rental housing units and disburse 12 000 finance-linked individual subsidies over the next three years.

Informal Settlement Upgrading Programme (ISUP)

The DHS has a target of 1 500 informal settlements for upgrading. By mid-2023, a total of 1 269 informal settlements were at various phases of upgrading. Through this programme, the department enters into social compacts with communities and ensuring that suitable land parcels are acquired to build houses for communities. The department continues to provide support to provinces and metros to improve the lives of people in informal settlements.

In October 2022, government hosted an international meeting with United Nations Habitat (UN-Habitat) to launch a framework for a Global Action Plan on Slums and Informal Settlements. The Global Action Plan Framework on Informal Settlements and Slums is a necessary tool for the world to achieve Sustainable Development Goals (SDG) Target 11.1 by 2030, which is to ensure access for all to adequate, safe and affordable housing and basic services and upgrade slums.

South Africa was an active proponent of the inclusion of SDG Goal 11 in Agenda 2030 and ensured that the issue of informal settlements and slums was adequately addressed, even in the New Urban Agenda.

Government is using its membership of Cities Alliance, the global partnership fighting urban poverty and supporting cities to deliver sustainable development, to intensify the fight against urban poverty, hunger and deliver sustainable development.

Eradication of mud houses

Mud houses whose structural integrity is compromised and those that are found in pieces of land that are unsuitable for settlement, collapse under the weight of heavy rains and floods. Most people in the rural part of the country are increasingly finding themselves homeless as more mud houses collapse.

Since government prioritised the eradication of mud houses, five provinces have implemented the programme to eradicate mud houses. In the 2022/23 financial year, a total of 8 262 mud houses were eradicated. Seven provinces have planned to eradicate 11 791 mud houses in the 2023/24 financial year.

The DHS planned to use remote sensing through satellite and other modern technology applications to locate and get a total count of all mud houses across the country.

Title deeds

The DHS has partnered with the Banking Association of South Africa to fast-track the delivery of title deeds to housing beneficiaries. This will be done by using the Youth Employment Services programme.

Housing entities

The DHS's housing entities include the:

- **National Housing Finance Corporation**, which was established as a development finance institution in 1996. The corporation is responsible for expanding income and middle-income households through financial intermediaries. Over the medium term, the corporation planned to focus on increasing affordable housing finance to intermediaries. The corporation is also mandated to administer the Finance-linked Subsidy Programme. First Home Finance is a once-off housing finance subsidy enables qualifying beneficiaries to buy or build their first homes on affordable basis. First Home Finance was developed by the DHS to enable sustainable and affordable first time home-ownership opportunities to South African citizens and legal

permanent residents whose household income is from R3 501 up to R22 000 per month. This market segment is generally referred to as (the 'affordable' or 'gap' market). Households in this income band generally find it hard to qualify for housing finance to access their first homes as their income is regarded as low for mortgage finance, but too high to qualify for a government 'free-basic house', the RDP or BNG house.

- **National Home Builders Registration Council**, is established in terms of the Housing Consumer Protection Measures Act of 1998 to protect the interests of housing consumers and regulate the home building industry. The council provides warranty protection against poor workmanship in newly built homes and ensures that home builders adhere to prescribed technical standards in the building process. The council generates its revenue through fees for the enrolment of newly constructed homes, the registration and renewal of membership for home builders, and the provision of technical services.
- **Property Practitioners Regulatory Authority** (formerly Estate Agency Affairs Board), was established in terms of the Property Practitioners Act of 2019 to regulate property practitioners in the marketing, promotion, management, sale, letting, financing and purchase of immovable property. The authority also regulates the conduct of property practitioners in dealing with consumers and manages the Property Practitioners Fidelity Fund. Over the medium term, the authority planned to focus on improving compliance within the sector by inspecting a targeted 920 estate agencies and renewing 211 128 fidelity fund certificates.
- **Housing Development Agency (HDA)**, which was established in terms of the HDA Act of 2008, is mandated to identify, hold, develop and release land for integrated human settlements development. The agency also provides project-level technical assistance and project management services to provinces and municipalities. Over the medium term, the agency planned to continue focusing on assisting provinces and municipalities with the implementation of human settlements programmes and projects. The agency was expected to provide upgrading support to provinces and municipalities for 850 informal settlements.
- **Social Housing Regulatory Authority**, was established in terms of the Social Housing Act of 2008 to regulate and invest in the social housing sector. The authority regulates social housing institutions and the units they manage, provides capital subsidies to accredited social housing institutions and builds the capacity of the sector. Over the medium term, the authority planned to focus on increasing the number of social housing units for rental, with the aim of delivering 8 000 units per year.



INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO **SOUTH AFRICA**

2022/23

International Relations

According to the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, the President is ultimately responsible for the foreign policy and international relations of South Africa. It is the President's prerogative to appoint heads of mission, receive foreign heads of mission, conduct state-to-state relations, and negotiate and sign all international agreements.

International agreements that are not of a technical, administrative or executive nature bind the country only after being approved by Parliament, which also approves the country's ratification of or accession to multilateral agreements. All international agreements must be tabled in Parliament.

The Minister of International Relations and Cooperation is entrusted with the formulation, promotion, execution and daily conduct of South Africa's foreign policy. The department is mandated to work for the realisation of South Africa's foreign policy objectives by:

- coordinating and aligning South Africa's international relations;
- monitoring international developments;
- communicating government's policy positions;
- developing and advising government on policy options, and creating mechanisms and avenues for achieving objectives;
- protecting South Africa's sovereignty and territorial integrity;
- contributing to the creation of an enabling international environment for South African businesses;
- sourcing developmental assistance; and
- assisting South African citizens abroad.

Over the medium-term period, the department planned to continue focusing on advancing the African Agenda, participating in global forums, and enhancing its infrastructure portfolio in foreign missions. The department operates mainly through the 116 diplomatic missions in 102 countries in which South Africa has representation.

Advancing the African Agenda

In its efforts to advance peace and security and prevent conflict in Africa, the DIRCO planned to continue playing an active role in the structures and processes of the African Union (AU). Accordingly, South Africa will continue to advance the implementation of the African Continental Free Trade Area and the AU's Agenda 2063.

The Southern African Development Community (SADC) is a major vehicle for South Africa's pursuit of regional development and integration. As such, the department planned to produce four reports per year on the outcomes of South-South engagements reflecting South Africa's participation and interests, such as enhancing trade relations and reducing conflict in Southern Africa.

As a member of the SADC, South Africa will continue to ensure that its interests and those of other members are advanced.

Participating global forums

South Africa advances its interests at the global level through its membership of and participation in United Nations (UN) programmes and forums. Accordingly, over the medium term, South Africa planned to continue promoting and advancing its foreign and domestic policy imperatives, which include advancing the African Agenda on peace and security, human rights, and economic and social development, as well as supporting the UN's 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development.

Managing infrastructure projects and properties

In an effort to strengthen its property portfolio over the medium-term period, the department planned to purchase properties for office and residential purposes to cut down on rental costs, and repurpose underused state-owned properties in its global portfolio. Repurposing involves converting offices or large official residences into staff quarters.

By mid-2023, plans were in place to build on state-owned vacant land in New Delhi, India, and Luanda, Angola, over the medium-term period, and refurbish, renovate and maintain 24 existing properties across the world in accordance with the outcomes of conditional assessments to preserve and prolong the department's property portfolio.

International relations

The DIRCO aims to strengthen political, economic and social relations through structured bilateral agreements and high-level engagements to advance South Africa's national priorities, the African Agenda and South-South cooperation on an ongoing basis.

- **Africa** embraces relevant national priorities by strengthening bilateral cooperation with countries in Africa by focusing on increasing exports of South African goods and services, foreign direct investment with technology transfers into value-added industries and mineral beneficiation, and inbound tourism and skills enhancement. South Africa has representation in 47 diplomatic missions in Africa.
- **Asia and Middle East** embraces relevant national priorities by strengthening bilateral cooperation with individual countries in Asia and the Middle East, with a focus on increasing exports of South African goods and services, foreign direct investment with technology transfers into value-added industries and mineral beneficiation, and inbound tourism and skills enhancement. South Africa has representation in 30 diplomatic missions in Asia and the Middle East.
- **Americas and Caribbean** embraces relevant national priorities by strengthening bilateral cooperation with individual countries in the Americas

and the Caribbean, particularly through increasing exports of South African goods and services, foreign direct investment with technology transfers into value-added industries and mineral beneficiation, and inbound tourism and skills enhancement. South Africa has representation in 13 diplomatic missions in the Americas and the Caribbean.

- **Europe** embraces relevant national priorities by strengthening bilateral cooperation with individual countries in Europe, focusing on increasing exports of South African goods and services, foreign direct investment with technology transfers into value-added industries and mineral beneficiation, and inbound tourism and skills enhancement. South Africa has representation in 23 diplomatic missions in Europe.

Entity:

African Renaissance and International Cooperation Fund (ARF)

The ARF was established in terms of the African Renaissance and International Cooperation Fund Act of 2000 to enhance cooperation between South Africa and other countries, particularly African ones; promote democracy and good governance; prevent and resolve conflict; encourage socio-economic development and integration; provide humanitarian assistance, and develop human resources.

Over the medium-term period, the entity planned to continue focusing on supporting projects that will enhance African trade, goods exchange, economic development and integration.

Regional body:

African Union

The AU is a continental body consisting of the 55 member states that make up the countries of the African Continent. It was officially launched in Durban in July 2002 as a successor to the Organisation of African Unity (OAU), 1963-1999).

In May 1963, 32 Heads of independent African States met in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia to sign the charter creating Africa's first post-independence continental institution, the OAU.

The OAU was the manifestation of the pan-African vision for an Africa that was united, free and in control of its own destiny and this was solemnised in the OAU Charter in which the founding fathers recognised that freedom, equality, justice and dignity were essential objectives for the achievement of the legitimate aspirations of the African peoples.

The AU is guided by its vision of "An Integrated, Prosperous and Peaceful Africa, driven by its own citizens and representing a dynamic force in the global arena."

International bodies:

Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa (BRICS)

The BRIC (Brazil, Russia, India and China) group was renamed as BRICS after South Africa was accepted as a full member at the BRIC Foreign Ministers' meeting in New York in September 2010. Accordingly, South Africa attended the 3rd BRICS Summit in Sanya, China on 14 April 2011.

Over a period of time, BRICS countries have come together to deliberate on important issues under the three pillars of political and security, economic and financial and cultural and people to people exchanges. BRICS serves as a champion of the needs and concerns of the peoples of the Global South, which include the need for beneficial economic growth, sustainable development and reform of multilateral systems.

South Africa assumed the Chair of BRICS on 1 January 2023 under the theme: "BRICS and Africa: Partnership for Mutually Accelerated Growth, Sustainable Development and Inclusive Multilateralism" and the Russian Federation's term was to start on 1 January 2024.

The DIRCO hosted the Sixth BRICS Sherpas Meeting from 30 November to 3 December 2023 in Durban, KwaZulu-Natal. The purpose of the meeting was to reflect on South Africa's tenure as Chair of BRICS for the year 2023 and to prepare for a handover to the next Chair, the Russian Federation.

South Africa hosted the XV BRICS Summit in Johannesburg from 22 to 24 August 2023. As part of its expansion process, BRICS invited the Argentine Republic, the Arab Republic of Egypt, the Federal Democratic Republic of Ethiopia, the Islamic Republic of Iran, the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia and the United Arab Emirates to become full members of BRICS. The membership took effect from 1 January 2024.

India, Brazil and South Africa (IBSA)

IBSA is a unique forum which brings together India, Brazil and South Africa, three large democracies and major economies from three different continents, facing similar challenges. All three countries are developing, pluralistic, multi-cultural, multi-ethnic, multilingual and multi-religious nations.

The grouping was formalised and named the IBSA Dialogue Forum when the Foreign Ministers of the three countries met in Brasilia on 6 June 2003 and issued the Brasilia Declaration. India is current IBSA Chair.

Brazil was IBSA Chair from 2 March 2023 and it aimed to strengthen IBSA in its three pillars: political coordination, trilateral cooperation and cooperation with other developing countries, through the IBSA Fund.

UN General Assembly (UNGA)

Established in 1945 under the Charter of the UN, the UNGA occupies a central position as the chief deliberative, policymaking and representative organ of the UN. Comprised of all 193 members of the UN, it provides a unique forum for multilateral discussion of the full spectrum of international issues covered by the

Charter. It also plays a significant role in the process of standard-setting and the codification of international law. The UNGA meets from September to December each year.

UN Security Council (UNSC)

The UNSC has primary responsibility for the maintenance of international peace and security. It has 15 members, and each member has one vote. Under the Charter of the UN, all member states are obligated to comply with UNSC decisions.

The UNSC takes the lead in determining the existence of a threat to the peace or act of aggression. It calls upon the parties to a dispute to settle it by peaceful means and recommends methods of adjustment or terms of settlement. In some cases, the UNSC can resort to imposing sanctions or even authorise the use of force to maintain or restore international peace and security. The year 2021 was the third year as a non-permanent member of the UNSC.

Commonwealth

The Commonwealth is a voluntary association of 53 independent member countries. Membership is diverse and includes both developed and developing countries in Africa, Asia, the Americas, the Caribbean, Europe and the South Pacific.

Since rejoining the Commonwealth in 1994, South Africa has interacted closely with the work of the Commonwealth contributing politically, financially and in terms of capacity and expertise to the work of the organisation.

Non-Aligned Movement (NAM)

The NAM, consisting of 120 members, is the largest political grouping of countries outside the UN, making it an important lobby group of developing countries in global affairs. South Africa formally joined the movement in 1994 and has played a leading role in NAM deliberations and meetings ever since.

Group of Twenty (G20)

South Africa has been a permanent member of the G20 since its inception in 1999 following the Asian financial crises. The G20 was established to increase multilateral cooperation for the recovery of the global economy, to bring stability to the global financial system, to promote long-term sustainable growth and to strengthen global economic governance.

World Health Organisation (WHO)

South Africa is one of the 194-member states that constitute the WHO. The country takes part in the annual World Health Assembly (WHA), which is the WHO's supreme decision-making body.

South Africa also participates in the WHO's annual Regional Committee for Africa, which reflects on the decisions taken at the WHA, particularly those

relevant to the continent. WHO works with all Member States to support them to achieve the highest standard of health for all people.

New Development Bank (NDB)

The NDB, formerly referred to as the BRICS Development Bank, was established in 2014 to strengthen cooperation among the BRICS group of countries, and complements the efforts of multilateral and regional financial institutions for global development.

The NDB finances projects and innovates tailored solutions to help build a more inclusive, resilient, and sustainable future for the planet. In line with its General Strategy, the NDB prioritises financing infrastructure and sustainable development projects that contribute to mitigating and adapting to climate change.



JUSTICE AND
CORRECTIONAL
SERVICES

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
SOUTH AFRICA

2022/23

Justice and Constitutional Development

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development (DoJCD) derives its mandate from the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 and a number of acts that assign functions to the department. These include the:

- establishment of Magistrate's courts and the appointment of magistrates and other judicial officers;
- establishment and functioning of the National Prosecuting Authority (NPA);
- conducting of criminal proceedings;
- prosecution of organised crime and corruption;
- forfeiture of assets obtained through illicit means;
- provision of witness protection to vulnerable and intimidated witnesses and their related persons in judicial proceedings;
- establishment and functioning of bodies responsible for legal aid, law reform and rule-making;
- appointment of masters of the High courts;
- management of third-party funds;
- administration of the Guardian's Fund and deceased and insolvent estates;
- management of state litigation;
- regulation and provision of legal advisory services to government departments;
- promotion, protection and enforcement of human rights;
- protection of vulnerable groups; and
- provision of support to Chapter 9 institutions.

As part of its overarching goal of ensuring that South Africans feel safe and are able to live without fear, the department invests in initiatives to serve everyone in South Africa as efficiently as possible. Accordingly, over the medium term, it planned to focus on implementing the recommendations of the state capture commission and Financial Action Task Force (FATF), and reducing gender-based violence and femicide (GBVF).

Implementing state capture commission and FATF recommendations

The NPA was expected to support the implementation of the state capture commission and FATF recommendations. This entails increasing capacity in the authority's National Prosecutions Service (NPS) and Investigating Directorate respectively; procuring specialist prosecution services for complex matters (especially financial crimes); commissioning contracted forensic auditors and accountants to deal with high-priority asset forfeiture matters; establishing a digital forensic data centre; providing close protection services and integrated security systems; and financing increased operational costs for witness protection.

Accordingly, the number of prosecutions of state capture, fraud or corruption and related matters enrolled in the courts is expected to increase from nine in 2022/23 to 18 in 2025/26.

Targets for a new indicator to measure the number of prosecutions involving money laundering charges are expected to be introduced from 2024/25 onwards, after establishing a baseline for such prosecutions in 2023/24.

Civil litigation will be initiated based on the special tribunal's recommendations related to the state capture commission.

Reducing GBVF

In its efforts to afford greater protection to citizens, particularly vulnerable groups, the DoJ&CD has moved towards a more gender-focused criminal justice system. A key aspect of this entails implementing the recommendations of the Presidential Summit Declaration against GBVF and the National Strategic Plan on GBVF.

This includes establishing a targeted 40 Sexual Offences courts (SOCs) as designated courts over the next three years, and improving the management of the National Register for Sex Offenders (NRSO) to ensure the strict vetting of anyone working with vulnerable people.

Thuthuzela Care centres (TCCs) are 24-hour facilities where victims of sexual offences have access to all relevant services, including police, counselling, doctors, court preparation and prosecutors. The centres were introduced as a critical part of South Africa's anti-rape and GBV strategies, which aim to reduce secondary victimisation, improve conviction rates and reduce the time taken to finalise cases. By mid-2023, there were 60 centres across the country. The department planned to increase the number of centres to 68 by 2025/26.

The DJ&CD planned to continue coordinating and contributing to the implementation of the National Action Plan for Combating Racism, Racial Discrimination, Xenophobia and Related Intolerances. This entails establishing an effective governance structure to lead and coordinate the implementation of the plan, developing a funding model, and establishing a rapid-response mechanism for incidents of racist and xenophobic offences or hate crimes.

Domestic violence means any physical abuse, sexual abuse, emotional, verbal and psychological abuse, economic abuse, intimidation, harassment, stalking, damage to property, trespassing where the parties do not share the same residence or any other controlling or abusive behaviour towards a complainant, where such conduct harms or may cause imminent harm to the safety, health or well-being of the complainant.

To curb GBVF, government has adopted a zero-tolerance towards rape, violation of the rights of lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender and intersex people, and other forms of violence towards women and children. GBVF remains a pervasive challenge in South Africa. The courts continued to put special emphasis on convictions in sexual offences cases, with the high conviction rate of 74,4% recorded for sexual offences cases.

In terms of the Criminal and Related Matters Amendment Act of 2021, bail in GBVF matters must be denied, unless it would be in the interests of justice to grant such bail. This Amendment Act also ends the granting of what is referred to as the 'police bail' or 'prosecution bail' in GBVF matters. All applications for bail in these cases must therefore be made in a court of law. The Domestic Violence Amendment Act of 2021 further permits the use of online applications

for protection orders. This is a viable option for victims of domestic violence to access court services remotely, and in a convenient and safe environment of their choice. The department has already developed the Online Web Portal for Domestic Violence Applications for Protection Orders.

Office of the Chief Justice (OCJ)

The OCJ renders support to the Chief Justice as the head of the judiciary, as provided for in Section 165(6) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, read together with the Superior Courts Act of 2013. The OCJ is also required to:

- provide and coordinate legal and administrative support to the Chief Justice;
- provide communication and relationship management services and intergovernmental and internal coordination;
- develop courts administration policy, norms and standards;
- support the development of judicial policy, norms and standards; support the judicial function of the Constitutional Court; and
- and support the Judicial Service Commission and South African Judicial Education Institute in the execution of their mandates.

Over the next three years, the OCJ planned to focus on improving access to justice and the services of the superior courts, and increasing access to judicial education courses. The work of the Superior Court Services programme is intended to enable access to justice, primarily by ensuring that the judiciary is supported.

To increase efficiencies such as the turnaround time in dealing with cases, the Court Online system is expected to be rolled out in 2023/24 to seven prioritised superior courts in the Eastern Cape, Free State, Mpumalanga, Limpopo, Northern Cape, North West and Western Cape. The plan is to implement the system in all the courts over the medium-term period.

Office of the State Attorney

The Office of the State Attorney provides legal services to national and provincial departments. State attorneys represent the State in all lawsuits and transactions for and against the State.

The functions of the State Attorney include the:

- drafting and managing of contracts on behalf of the State.
- handling of criminal and civil litigation cases instituted against State officials and committed by means of acts or omissions while executing their official duties.
- handing of applications from qualifying personnel for admission as advocates for the High Court.
- handling of applications for admission as practicing attorney
- regulation and overseeing of the conduct of private attorneys operating under the State Attorney Act.

The courts:

Constitutional Court

The Constitutional Court was established in 1996 by the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996. The court is situated at Constitutional Hill Precinct in Braamfontein, Johannesburg.

There are 11 judges of the Constitutional Court, namely a Chief Justice, Deputy Chief Justice and nine judges. A matter must be heard by at least eight judges.

The Constitutional Court is the apex court in South Africa. Its decisions cannot be changed by any other court. The court decides constitutional and general matters. A constitutional matter includes any issue involving the interpretation, protection or enforcement of the Constitution.

General matters are heard if the Constitutional Court grants leave to appeal. A general matter is one that is of general and public importance.

The Constitutional Court makes the final decision whether a matter is within its jurisdiction. Only the Constitutional Court hears:

- disputes between organs of state in the national or provincial sphere concerning the constitutional status, powers or functions of any of those organs of state;
- the constitutionality of any parliamentary or provincial Bill;
- the constitutionality of any amendment to the Constitution;
- a matter that Parliament or the President has failed to fulfil a constitutional obligation;
- a matter to certify a provincial constitution in terms of Section 144 of the Constitution.

A matter may be brought directly to the Constitutional Court or appealed directly to the Constitutional Court from any other court. Leave of the Constitutional Court is required to do so.

Supreme Court of Appeal (SCA)

The SCA, which is based in Bloemfontein in the Free State, was established in 1910 as the Appellate Division. It is designated as the Supreme Court of Appeal by the Constitution. The court consists of a President, a Deputy President and a number of judges of appeal.

Ordinarily, proceedings are presided over by three or five judges, depending on the nature of the appeal. An appeal in a criminal or civil matter may be heard before a court consisting of three judges. A court consisting of a larger number of judges hear a matter of importance.

The SCA decides appeals except in labour and competition matters. Appeals to the SCA emanate from the High Court of South Africa or a court of a similar status to the High Court. Except for the Constitutional Court, no other court can change a decision of the SCA. The SCA may change its own decision.

The final decision of the SCA is the one supported by most of the judges listening to the case. If a judgement is not agreed to by a majority of the judges, the matter

is adjourned and recommenced afresh before a new court. The President of the SCA determines the constitution of the new court.

High courts

The High Court of South Africa consists of the following divisions:

- Eastern Cape Division, with its main seat in Makhanda.
- Free State Division, with its main seat in Bloemfontein.
- Gauteng Division, with its main seat in Pretoria.
- KwaZulu-Natal Division, with its main seat in Pietermaritzburg.
- Limpopo Division, with its main seat in Polokwane.
- Mpumalanga Division, with its main seat in Mbombela.
- Northern Cape Division, with its main seat in Kimberley.
- North West Division, with its main seat in Mahikeng.
- Western Cape Division, with its main seat in Cape Town.

Each Division of the High Court consists of a Judge President, one or more Deputy Judges President and judges. The number of judges in each Division are determined in accordance with prescribed criteria and approved by the President.

Each Division has an area of jurisdiction which comprises of any part of one or more provinces. Each Division has a main seat and one or more local seats. A local seat has its own (exclusive) area of jurisdiction. Appeals arising from a decision of a single judge or of a Magistrate's Court within the local seat, may, by direction of the Judge President be heard at the main seat of the Division.

The main seat has concurrent (the same) appeal jurisdiction over a local seat. Judges are assigned within the Division by the Judge President. The High Court may sit elsewhere than the main or local seat to hear a matter, as determined by the Judge President after consulting the Minister. The reasons for doing so are expediency or the interests of justice.

A civil matter heard by a court of first instance, meaning that the matter is not an appeal matter, is presided over by a single judge. Any matter may be heard by a court consisting of not more than three judges. A single judge hearing a civil matter may discontinue the hearing and refer it for hearing to the full court of that Division.

This is done in consultation with the Judge President or, in the absence of both the Judge President and the Deputy Judge President, the senior available judge. The law relating to criminal procedure determines the number of judges hearing a criminal case as a court of first instance.

Two judges hear any civil or criminal appeal. If the judges hearing the appeal do not agree, then at any time before a judgment is handed down, a third judge will be added to hear the appeal.

The decision of the majority of the judges of a full court of a Division is the decision of the court. Where the majority of the judges disagree, the hearing is adjourned and commenced from the start (de novo) before a court consisting of three other judges. The High Court decides constitutional matters, with two exceptions. The Constitutional Court may agree to hear the matter directly or an

Act of Parliament may assign another court of a status similar to the High Court to hear the constitutional matter. The High Court decides other matters that have not been assigned to another court by an Act of Parliament.

The jurisdiction of the High Court to hear any matter includes:

- All persons residing or being in the Division;
- All causes arising and all offences triable within its area of jurisdiction;
- All other matters which it may legally recognise;
- Appeals from all Magistrates' courts within the area of the division; and
- Review of the proceedings of Magistrates' courts.

Circuit courts of the divisions of the High Court

Circuit courts are part of the High Court, and serve far-flung and rural areas. They are established by the Judge President of a Division by way of a notice in the *Government Gazette*. A Circuit court's jurisdiction applies within the area of the Division.

The area of jurisdiction of a Circuit court is the circuit district. Circuit courts adjudicate civil or criminal matters. The boundaries of a circuit district may be altered by notice in the *Government Gazette*. Circuit courts are held at least twice a year. The court is presided over by a judge of the Division. The judge president of the division determines the times and places for the sittings of the court to hear the matters.

Tax courts

Tax courts are established by the President of the Republic by proclamation in the *Government Gazette*. In March 2003 the Tax courts were established for areas. The Special Income Tax courts constituted before 1 April 2003 for the hearing of income tax appeals were abolished. A Tax Court is established for the area of the Division of the High Court.

The Tax Court hears tax appeals and is presided over by a Judge or an Acting Judge of the High Court, who is the President of the Tax Court. The judge is assisted by an accountant and a representative of the commercial community.

In appeals relating to the business of mining or the valuation of assets, the representative must be a registered mining engineer; or a sworn appraiser. Three judges hear a dispute if a dispute exceeds R50 million; or South African Revenue Service (SARS) and the 'appellant' jointly apply to the Judge President.

The Judge President of the Division of the High Court nominates and seconds a judge or an acting judge of the division to be the President of the Tax Court. A secondment applies for a period or for the hearing of a particular case.

The President of the Republic appoints the panel of members of a Tax Court for a term of office of five years. The President may consider reappointing an eligible member for a further period or periods, and may terminate the appointment of a member at any time for misconduct, incapacity or incompetence.

A member's appointment lapses in the event that the tax court is abolished. A member of the tax court must perform his/her functions independently, impartially

and without fear, favour or prejudice. The Commissioner of the SARS appoints the registrar of the Tax Court. The registrar and persons appointed in the office of the registrar are SARS employees.

When the tax court sits to hear an appeal, the proceedings are not public. The president of the tax court may in exceptional circumstances, on request of any person, allow that person or any other person to attend the sitting.

In such a matter, the court considers any representations made by the 'appellant' and a senior SARS official who appears in support of the assessment or 'decision'. The tax court makes the following orders in appeals:

- Confirms an assessment or decision;
- Orders an assessment or decision to be altered; or
- Refers an assessment back to SARS for further examination and assessment.

In the case of an appeal against an understatement penalty imposed by SARS, the court may reduce, confirm or increase the understatement.

Appeal against the decision of the tax court

The taxpayer or SARS may appeal against a decision of the tax court. An appeal against a decision of the tax court lies:

- to the full bench of the Provincial Division of the High Court which has jurisdiction in the area in which the tax court sitting is held; or
- (b) to the Supreme Court of Appeal, without an intermediate appeal to the Provincial Division, if:

- (i) the president of the Tax Court has granted leave under the rules; or
- (ii) the appeal was heard by the Tax Court.

Labour Court and Labour Appeal Court

The Labour Court has the same status as a High Court. It adjudicates matters relating to labour disputes between an employer and employee. It is mainly guided by the Labour Relations Act of 1995 which deals with matters such as unfair labour practices. The Labour Appeal Court hears appeals against decisions in the Labour Court and this is the highest court for labour appeals.

Land Claims Court

The Land Claims Court specialises in dealing with disputes that arise out of laws that underpin South Africa's land reform initiative. These are the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994, the Land Reform (Labour Tenants) Act of 1996 and the Extension of Security of Tenure Act of 1997.

The Land Claims Court has the same status as the High courts. Any appeal against a decision of the Land Claims Court lies with the Supreme Court of Appeal, and if appropriate, to the Constitutional Court.

The Land Claims Court can hold hearings in any part of the country, if it thinks this will make it more accessible and it can conduct its proceedings in an informal way if this is appropriate, although its main office is in Randburg.

Land Court

The Land Court Act of 2023 was published in *Government Gazette* 49372, GoN 3744, 27 September 2023, to provide for the establishment of a Land Court and appeals against decisions of the Land Court; to make provision for the administration and judicial functions of the Land Court; to provide for the jurisdiction of the Land Court and Magistrates' Court for certain land related matters; to provide for mediation procedures; to amend certain laws relating to the adjudication of land matters by other courts; and to provide for matters connected therewith.

Traditional courts

The Traditional Courts Act of 2022 was published in *Government Gazette* 49373, GoN 3745, 27 September 2023, to provide a uniform legislative framework for the structure and functioning of Traditional courts, in line with constitutional imperatives and values; and to provide for matters connected therewith.

Magistrates' courts

The Magistrates' courts are the district courts and the regional courts. The district courts hear limited types of civil cases. They cannot deal with certain matters such as divorce, arguments about a person's will and matters where it is asked if a person is mentally sane or not.

The types of civil matters that the magistrates' courts hear are set out in the Magistrates Courts Act (32 of 1944 as amended). With effect from 27 March 2014, district courts hear matters up to the amount of R200 000. Regional courts hear civil matters above R200 000 up to and including 400 000. The Minister may change these amounts at any time by notice in the *Government Gazette*. Some of the civil matters that the Magistrates courts hear are:

- delivery or transfer of any property, movable or immovable;
- ejectment against the occupier of any premises or land;
- matters arising from a mortgage bond;
- matters arising out of a credit agreement;
- other matters not already set out above, such as claims for damages caused negligently to a vehicle or injuries to a person.

Divorces

In addition to civil matters, a regional court hears:

- the nullity of a marriage or a civil union;
- divorces and ancillary matters; and
- matters in terms of the Recognition of Customary Marriages Act, 1998 (Act 120 of 1998).

A Regional Court in these matters has the same jurisdiction as a High Court. The Regional Magistrate may be assisted by two assessors to advise on questions of fact.

Criminal matters in the Magistrates' courts

The State prosecutes people who are charged with breaking the law. The criminal cases are held in the criminal courts. Criminal courts can be divided into two groups:

Regional courts

A Regional Magistrate makes the decisions in a Regional Court, sometimes with the support of lay assessors.

The Regional courts deal with serious cases such as murder, rape, armed robbery and serious assault. These courts do not hear treason cases. The Criminal Law (Sentencing) Amendment Act of 2007 obliges the court to sentence a person to life imprisonment for offences such as murder or rape.

The convicted person must prove "substantial compelling" circumstances in order for the court to impose a sentence less than life imprisonment. A Regional Court may impose a maximum fine of R600 000 and a maximum sentence of 15 years in common law offences (no statute or act of Parliament determines the sentence for the offence).

A statute may provide for a maximum term of imprisonment in excess of 15 years for specific offences. An example is the Drugs and Drug Trafficking Act (140 of 1992). The maximum sentence of imprisonment for dealing in drugs is 25 years.

District courts

The District courts try the less serious cases. They do not hear cases of murder, treason, rape, terrorism or sabotage. The maximum term of imprisonment in common law crimes (crimes that are not specified by a statute/an act of Parliament) is three years.

The maximum fine is R120 000. A statute may provide for a maximum term of imprisonment in excess of three years for specific offences that are heard in the District Magistrates' courts.

Specialised Magistrates courts

There are a number of specialised courts located at the level of the Magistrates' Courts that deal with certain types of matters. They are the children's courts, commercial crime courts and SOCs.

Specialised Commercial Crimes Courts (SCCCs)

The SCCC operates at the level of the Regional courts. They hear commercial crime and organised commercial crime matters. The first SCCC was established in 2009. They have grown in number over the years and are now found in all nine regional divisions.

A Regional Magistrate presides in the SCCC. Commercial and organised commercial crimes are investigated by the commercial branches of the South African Police Service (SAPS). These cases are prosecuted by the Specialised Commercial Crimes Unit of the NPA.

Small Claims courts

Small Claims courts are established for a magisterial district. The court hears civil matters that arose in the magisterial district in which the Small Claims Court is situated.

The maximum amount of a claim that may be brought is determined in a Notice in the *Government Gazette*. In 2019 the amount was determined as R20 000. Natural persons are allowed to bring claims in the Small Claims courts whilst businesses, for example companies, close corporations, solely owned businesses and partnerships, are not permitted to do so. Claims may be brought against a business. A claim may not be brought against the State.

There is no Magistrate or Judge in the Small Claims Court. The presiding officer is a Commissioner who is usually a practicing advocate or an attorney. Commissioners are appointed by the Minister of Justice and Correctional Services.

The commissioners render their services without any remuneration. Legal representation is not permitted during the proceedings in the court. The proceedings in the court are different from a Magistrates' Court or the High Court. The Commissioner asks each party questions to determine what transpired in the case.

Some types of matters that the Small Claims courts do not hear are divorce, the validity or interpretation of a will, the mental status of a person, defamation, malicious prosecution, wrongful imprisonment and wrongful arrest. You can contact your nearest Small Claims Court through your nearest Magistrate's Court.

Equality courts

Equality courts have been established to help someone who believes that they have suffered unfair discrimination, hate speech or harassment. The Equality courts were extended to the Magistrates' courts primarily to bring access to justice to the marginalized and vulnerable citizens to assert their rights.

Anyone can take a case to the Equality Court, even if you are not directly involved in what happened. This means a complaint to the court can be made against someone or an organisation you believe have failed to respect the rights of another person.

Proceedings in the High courts are costly for the majority of people, however in the Equality courts, legal representation is not a prerequisite and there are no cost incurred when lodging a complaint, thus making it easy to access.

In terms of the Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act of 2000, the South African Human Rights Commission and Commission on Gender Equality are mandated to assist complainants in taking their matters to the Equality courts.

Maintenance courts

A Maintenance Court is not a specialised court per se. A very high number of maintenance applications are heard in the maintenance courts. The court is

located at each Magistrate's Court. A Maintenance Officer is in charge of the maintenance matter.

The Maintenance Officer assists with application for child maintenance. Maintenance is at the request of the biological or legal guardian of the child. The maintenance sum received by the guardian is for the upkeep of the child. A child's upkeep is not limited to groceries but encompasses all the necessary needs of the child.

A maintenance defendant is someone who is legally obliged to maintain a child. Paternity is proved through DNA testing. The amount that is necessary for the maintenance of a child differs from one family to the next in line with their living standards.

The amount that the defendant can afford is important. The say so of a defendant and claimant about their income and the needs of a child does not suffice. Each party has to provide proof of their earnings and expenses.

Once a matter is in the maintenance court, if the defendant agrees to pay maintenance and both the defendant and the guardian of the child agree on an amount of the maintenance, then the maintenance officer will request the Magistrate to make the offer an order of court. This removes the need for a drawn out trial and streamlines the court process.

If no agreement on the amount is reached or the defendant refuses to make an offer acceptable to the guardian of the child, then the maintenance officer will request the Magistrate to conduct a trial. In such an instance the Magistrate will consider all the financial circumstances and make an order for maintenance.

Legal representation is allowed. The proceedings are recorded but conducted informally due to the nature of maintenance matters. The Magistrate can ask many questions. Maintenance courts aim to ensure that those who have a duty to maintain minors are held accountable.

A person may be criminally charged for a deliberate failure to pay maintenance that arose from a court order. The court must first establish that there was a deliberate default.

If, for example, the debtor was not earning an income because he/she was unemployed during a particular time when he/she was liable to pay maintenance, then it cannot be said that the failure to pay was deliberate. If a debtor is found guilty of failure to pay maintenance, the person has a criminal conviction.

Apart from a criminal prosecution, the debtor's property may be attached and sold by the Sheriff in civil proceedings. A maintenance debt has the same effect as a civil debt. A maintenance debt is enforceable. A debtor's pension, annuity, gratuity, emoluments or debt owing to the maintenance debtor may also be attached.

Sexual Offences courts

To combat sexual violence, especially against women and children, the DOJ&CD reintroduced the SOC's in the country with the aim to:

- reduce secondary victimisation often suffered by the victims when they

engage with the criminal justice system, particularly the court system;

- reduce the turnaround time in the finalisation of these cases; and
- improve the conviction rate in sexual offence cases.

As of April 2022, 116 Regional courts were upgraded to SOC's. A SOC is defined as a regional court that deals exclusively with cases of sexual offences.

A hybrid SOC is defined as a regional court dedicated for the adjudication of sexual offences cases in any specified area. It is a court that is established to give priority to sexual offences cases, whilst permitted to deal with other cases.

Children's courts

A Children's Court is a special court which deals with issues affecting children. Every Magistrate's Court in South Africa is a Children's Court. The children's court also takes care of children who are in need of care and protection and makes decisions about children who are abandoned, neglected or abused.

Any person/ child may approach the clerk of the children's court when he/ she believe that a child may be in need of care and protection. The Children's Court can place a child in safe care or refer the child and/or the parent to services that they may require.

Community courts

Community courts, such as the Hatfield Community Court in Pretoria, are normal district magistrates' courts that assist in dealing with matters in partnership with the community and business. These courts focus on restorative justice processes, such as diverting young offenders into suitable programmes.

Traditional courts

There are traditional courts (formerly chiefs' courts) established at traditional community areas in rural villages.

National Register for Sex Offenders

The NRSO is a record of names of those found guilty of sexual offences against children and mentally disabled people. The register gives employers in the public or private sectors such as schools, crèches and hospitals the right to check that the person being hired is fit to work with children or mentally disabled people.

National Child Protection Register (NCPR)

The NCPR records vulnerable children, under the age of 18 years, who are in need of care and protection. The register is maintained by a social worker within a local Department of Social Development and designated child protection organisations. Information contained in the NCPR is strictly confidential and can only be shared with those who form part of the child protection team such as a teacher, nurse, care giver, police officer and magistrate.

According to Children's Act of 2005, the purpose of the register is to:

- have a record of abuse or deliberate neglect

- inflicted on specific children.
- have a record of the circumstances surrounding the abuse or deliberate neglect inflicted on the children.
- use the information in the NCPR in order to protect these children from further abuse or neglect.
- monitor cases and services to such children.
- share information between professionals that are part of the child protection team.
- determine patterns and trends of abuse or deliberate neglect of children.
- use the information in the NCPR for planning and budgetary purposes to prevent the abuse and deliberate neglect of children and protect children on a national, provincial and municipal level.

Maintenance

Maintenance is the obligation to provide another person, for example a minor, with housing, food, clothing, education and medical care, or with the means that are necessary for providing the person with these essentials. As part of further improving the maintenance system, the Maintenance Amendment Act of 2015 was enacted to ensure that every child receives the appropriate parental care, basic nutrition, shelter, basic healthcare services, education and other related support. The amendment also ensures the blacklisting of defaulters.

Human trafficking

Human trafficking has become a focus of attention in the country following the introduction of the new visa requirements for children travelling through South Africa's ports of entry. Legislation aimed at preventing trafficking defines trafficking to include the recruitment, transportation, sale or harbour of people by means of force, deceit, the abuse of vulnerability and the abuse of power for exploitation.

Drug abuse

To curb the growing abuse of drugs, the DoJ&CD has amended Schedules 1 and 2 of the Drugs and Drug Trafficking Act of 1992 to make the use and possession of drugs such as *nyaope* (also known as woonga or wunga) a criminal offence. The use, possession and sale of dependence-producing drugs is strictly prohibited and punishable in South Africa. If convicted, a fine and/or imprisonment period of up to 15 years can be imposed. Selling or dealing in *nyaope* is punishable with a fine and/or imprisonment for a period of up to 25 years.

Role players:

Legal Aid South Africa (Legal Aid SA)

Legal Aid SA provides legal aid or makes legal aid available to indigent persons within the budget allocated to it by the State. Legal Aid SA has introduced a "Please Call Me" service through which members of the public send a "Please

Call Me” text message and a legal advisor returns the call at no cost to the sender. The institution has also established a social media presence on Facebook, Twitter and Instagram.

Special Investigating Unit

The SIU, which works closely with the NPA, provides professional forensic investigating and litigation services to all state institutions at the national, provincial and local levels to combat maladministration, corruption and fraud; and protects state assets and public funds. It also works with the Asset Forfeiture Unit (AFU) in cases where the powers of this unit are more suitable for recovering the proceeds of crime.

National Prosecuting Authority

The purpose of the NPA is provide a coordinated prosecuting service that ensures that justice is delivered to victims of crime through general and specialised prosecutions. It also seeks to remove profit from crime and protect certain witnesses.

The NPA structure includes the NPS, the Witness Protection Programme, the AFU and units such as the Sexual Offences and Community Affairs (SOCA) Unit, the Specialised Commercial Crime Unit (SCCU) and the Priority Crimes Litigation Unit (PCLU).

Office for Witness Protection (OWP)

The OWP provides for temporary protection, support and related services to vulnerable and intimidated witnesses and related people in judicial proceedings in terms of the Witness Protection Act of 1998.

Asset Forfeiture Unit

The AFU seizes assets acquired from the proceeds of crime or that have been part of an offence through criminal or civil processes. continues to play a critical part in addressing the scourge of corruption. The AFU can seize and forfeit property that was bought from the proceeds of crime or property that was used to commit a crime.

The Family Advocate

The role of the Family Advocate is to promote and protect the best interests of the children in civil disputes over parental rights and responsibilities.

Sexual Offences and Community Affairs Unit

The SOCA acts against the victimisation of vulnerable groups, mainly women and children. One of the unit’s key achievements in ensuring government’s commitment to the fight against sexual offences and GBVF is the establishment of TCCs. The TCCs are one-stop facilities that aim to provide survivors with a broad range of essential services – from emergency medical care counselling

to court preparation – in a holistic, integrated and victim-friendly manner. The Thuthuzela Project is supported by the roll-out of victim support rooms in an effort to show empathy to victims of violent crime, especially in cases of sexual offences, child abuse and domestic violence. The TCC model aims to provide a more effective and victim-centric approach to reporting sexual offences.

The fight against violent crime, particularly rape, has recently been undermined by the challenges around the management of forensic DNA due to shortages of essential chemicals required for DNA analysis.

It resulted in a national backlog of these cases being prosecuted in courts. As part of the interventions, the NPA established a partnership with the SAPS Forensic Sciences Laboratory to reduce the backlog in DNA processing.

Family violence, child protection and sexual offences units (FCS)

The FCS units operate in all SAPS clusters across the country. To give further impetus to the investigation of crimes of this nature, forensic social workers were appointed to assist in cases of child sexual abuse by conducting forensic assessments, compiling court reports and providing expert evidence in court.

Priority Crimes Litigation Unit (PCLU)

The PCLU is a specialist unit mandated to tackle cases that threaten national security. The PCLU was created by presidential proclamation and is allocated categories of cases either by the President or by the National Director.

National Prosecutions Service

A significant majority of the NPA's prosecutors are housed in the NPS, the organisation's biggest unit. The NPS is headed by the Deputy Director of Public Prosecutions (DPPs). They head the respective regional jurisdictions, which are attached to the High courts of the country. All the public prosecutors and state advocates manning the district, regional and high courts report to the DPPs in their respective areas of jurisdiction.

Specialised Commercial Crime Unit

The SCCU's mandate is to effectively prosecute complex commercial crime cases emanating from the commercial branches of the SAPS. The client base of the unit comprises a broad spectrum of complainants in commercial cases, ranging from private individuals and corporate bodies to state departments.

Public Protector

The PP investigates complaints from the public or on own initiative against government at any level, its officials, persons performing public functions, corporations or companies where the State and statutory councils are involved.

The PP's services are free and available to everyone. Complainants' names are kept confidential as far as possible. The President appoints the PP on recommendation of the National Assembly and in terms of the Constitution, for a

non-renewable period of seven years. The PP is subject only to the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 and the law, and functions independently from government and any political party.

No person or organ of State may interfere with the functioning of the PP. The PP has the power to report a matter to Parliament, which will debate it and ensure that the PP's recommendations are followed.

Correctional Services

The Department of Correctional Services (DCS) derives its mandate from the Criminal Procedure Act of 1977; the Correctional Services Act of 1998, as amended; the 2005 *White Paper on Corrections*; and the 2014 *White Paper on Remand Detention Management in South Africa*.

This legislation allows the department to contribute to the preservation and promotion of a just, peaceful and safe society by ensuring that the corrections environment is secure, safe and humane, and that offenders are optimally rehabilitated to reduce their likelihood of reoffending.

The department is committed to creating safe, secure and dignified conditions for inmates and department personnel, and ensuring that the public is safe. To this end, the department carries out activities involving security operations, the provision and maintenance of appropriate facilities, remand detention, offender management, the proper administration and profiling of inmates, and the consideration of offenders for release or placement into the system of community corrections.

Accordingly, over the medium term, the DCS planned to focus on providing adequate security and security equipment at correctional facilities; improving facilities; offering effective rehabilitation programmes, which includes implementing the self-sufficiency and sustainability framework; and successfully reintegrating offenders into society.

Providing adequate security and security equipment at correctional facilities

Over the next three years, the department aimed to keep the percentage of escapes at or below 0.031% and the percentage of injuries at less than 4.6%. To achieve this, it aimed to enhance its security operations by providing personnel with appropriate equipment, including body armour, ammunition, leg irons, handcuffs, metal detectors, tonfas, gas or fire filters, pepper spray, neutralisers and mobile parcel scanners.

Improving facilities

To continue implementing strategies to reduce expected overcrowding in correctional facilities, over the next three years, the department planned to provide for the construction and refurbishment of facilities. This aimed to ensure that a targeted 1 000 additional bed spaces were made available over the next three years.

Effective rehabilitation

The DCS will continue to ensure that all sentenced offenders are provided with effective rehabilitation programmes to enable their successful reintegration into society. In its efforts to achieve this, the department will implement programmes that focus on addressing the underlying causes of offending behaviour, providing educational and vocational training to offenders to improve their life skills and employability upon release, and continuing to implement the self-sufficiency and sustainability framework.

The framework is intended to guide the department towards finding innovative ways to generate its own revenue and contribute to economic development while upskilling and rehabilitating offenders. Implementing the framework primarily entails running production workshops and agricultural farms where offenders are trained to produce items – such as furniture, uniforms, shoes, baked goods and agricultural products – that can be sold or used within the department. The department plans to supplement these potential income streams by hiring out offender labour.

Reintegrating offenders into society

In its efforts to enable the effective reintegration of offenders into society, the department provides aftercare support through the facilitation of programmes and skills that seek to assist parolees and former offenders to be self-sufficient.

To reintegrate offenders into the system of community corrections, all parole considerations should include victim participation to provide a platform for dialogue between offenders and victims, and thereby contribute to healing and restoration. The department plans to increase the number of victims participating in dialogues and other restorative justice programmes from 4 100 in 2022/23 to 5 900 in 2025/26.

The percentage of sentenced offenders on correctional sentence plans is expected to remain at 84% over the period ahead, and 90% of offenders are expected to participate in occupational skills programmes.

Other role players

Medical Parole Advisory Board

The Correctional Matters Amendment Act of 2011 provides for a new medical parole policy and correctional supervision.

Correctional Supervision and Parole Board

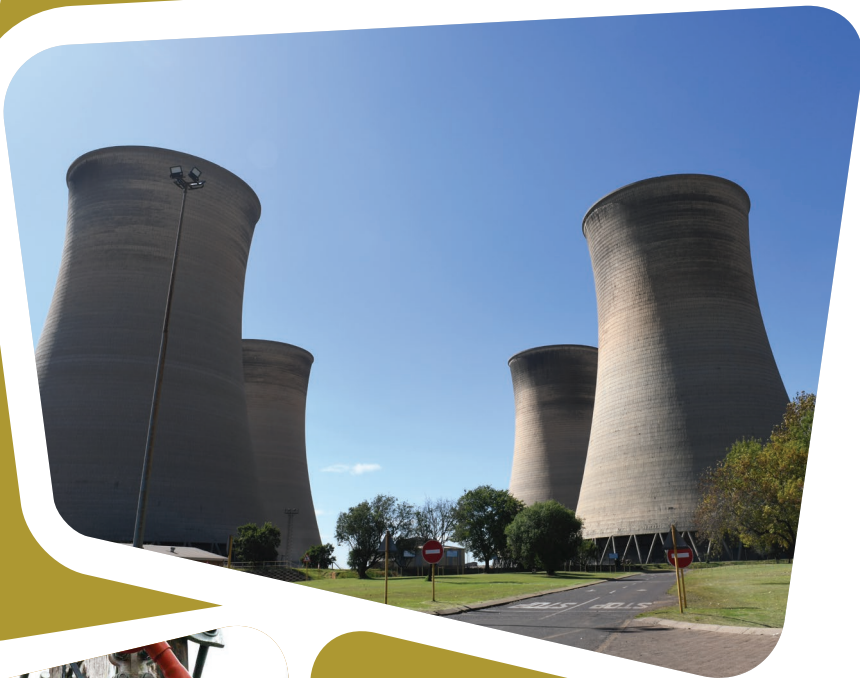
Correctional Supervision and Parole boards are responsible for dealing with parole matters and matters of correctional supervision. The Correctional Supervision and Parole boards have decision-making competency except:

- decisions regarding the granting of parole to people who are declared dangerous criminals in terms of Section 286A of the Criminal Procedure Act (CPA) of 1998.
- the converting of sentences of imprisonment imposed in terms of Section

276 (A) (3) of the CPA of 1998 into correctional supervision.

- decisions with regard to those sentenced to life imprisonment. In such cases, recommendations are submitted to the courts that in turn will decide in respect of conditional placement.

Correctional Supervision and Parole boards are chaired by community members who are regarded as suitable and capable of carrying out the responsibilities. The DCS provides the members with intensive training in respect of the processes, legislative implications and relative policies.



MINERAL RESOURCES AND ENERGY

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
SOUTH AFRICA

2022/23

Mineral Resources and Energy

The Department of Mineral Resources and Energy (DMRE) is mandated to ensure the transparent and efficient regulation of South Africa's mineral resources and minerals industry, and the secure and sustainable provision of energy in support of socio-economic development.

Several Acts regulate the mining, minerals and energy sectors. Key among these are the:

- Petroleum Products Act of 1977, which regulates the petroleum industry at the manufacturing, wholesale and retail levels;
- Mine Health and Safety Act of 1996, which governs mine health and safety;
- Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act of 2002, which provides the regulatory framework for equitable access to and the sustainable development of mineral resources and related matters;
- Electricity Regulation Act of 2006, which establishes a national regulatory framework for the electricity supply industry, including registration and licensing; and
- National Energy Act of 2008, which empowers the minister to plan for and ensure the security of supply for the energy sector.

The 1998 *White Paper on Energy Policy*, alongside the 2003 *White Paper on Renewable Energy*, sets out government's overarching position on the supply and consumption of energy.

Other applicable policies include the National Development Plan: Vision 2030; Integrated Energy Plan; Integrated Resource Plan (IRP); Electricity Pricing Policy, the Paris Agreement on Climate Change, the National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act of 2004 and the National Energy Act of 2008.

Over the medium term, the department planned to continue focusing on regulating the petroleum sector; ensuring mine health, safety and equity; rehabilitating mines and the environment; extending access to electricity; enhancing energy efficiency; and managing nuclear energy in accordance with international commitments.

This is intended to ensure that South Africa has an adequate supply of electricity and liquid fuels to maintain economic activity and prevent disruptions, and to give effect to a mining sector that prioritises the welfare of its human resources and the environment.

The DMRE's regulatory and oversight work requires inspections to ensure that mining companies and petroleum licence holders comply with legislative requirements and that electricity connections are verified through the integrated national electrification programme.

Regulating the petroleum sector

The department will continue to enforce compliance with regulatory standards and transformation objectives in the petroleum sector. It planned to inspect 4 500 petroleum retail sites and issue mining rights or permits to 600 historically disadvantaged South Africans over the period ahead. In improving the quality

and security of petroleum fuels, the department planned to sample fuel and test petroleum products at 3 240 petroleum retail sites over the medium-term period to ensure that fuel meets quality standards.

Ensuring mine health, safety and equity

The Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate programme promotes mine health and safety, and aims to contribute to skills development and transformation. The inspectorate engages with mine management and executives, and analyses the outcomes of inspection and audits. The DMRE was expected to conduct 24 000 mine inspections over the medium term.

To accelerate transformation in the mining sector, the department aims to monitor and enforce compliance with the mining charter by conducting 636 social and labour plan verification inspections and 1 500 mine economic verification inspections over the medium-term period.

Small-scale mining projects facilitate and develop the artisanal and small-scale mining sector, and provide an opportunity for previously disadvantaged communities to enter and participate in mining.

To help realise the potential of this sector, the department aims to provide financial and non-financial support to 12 new artisanal and small-scale mining companies over the medium term at a projected cost of R27 million per year.

Rehabilitating mines and the environment

To promote the health and safety of mine employees and surrounding communities, the department will intensify its efforts to rehabilitate dangerous, derelict and ownerless mining sites. With the Council for Mineral Technology and Research (Mintek) as the implementing agent, the department planned to rehabilitate nine mines and seal 360 shafts or holings over the medium term.

Extending access to electricity

Government's policy to extend access to electricity to all South Africans is carried out primarily through the integrated national electrification programme, through which an additional 660 000 households are expected to be connected to the electricity grid over the medium term. This will require six new substations to be built and nine substations to be upgraded over the next three years.

A further 15 000 households in each year over the medium-term period were expected to be provided with non-grid electricity connections. The bulk of these connections are in sparsely populated rural areas (mostly in Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and Limpopo) and high-density informal settlements. .

Coupled with the intention to create a competitive supply and demand electricity market, government has created the green economy. Through the Risk Mitigation Independent Power Producer Procurement Programme and the Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Procurement Programme, government had by mid-2023 procured a total of 7 786 megawatts (MW) through Bid Windows 4,5 and 6.

A total of 2 130 MW were connected to the grid and and 150 MW) and 784 MW were envisaged to be operationalised in November 2023 and August 2024, respectively.

Enhancing energy efficiency

To realise a target of 1.5 terawatt-hours of energy savings over the medium term, allocations to the energy efficiency and demand-side management grant are expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.3%, from R223.2 million in 2022/23 to R253.4 million in 2025/26. This will enable municipalities to undertake initiatives to upgrade municipal infrastructure that is not energy efficient, such as replacing old street and traffic lights with greener technology.

Managing nuclear energy

The South African Nuclear Energy Corporation was expected to continue with the decontamination and decommissioning of old nuclear facilities. By mid-2023, preparatory work was underway to procure a multipurpose reactor to replace the 58-year-old SAFARI-1 research reactor, which is approaching the end of its useful life. The reactor is used for research and development, and to manufacture medical isotopes.

Role players:

- **Mine Health and Safety Council:** The Mine Health and Safety Council was established in terms of the Mine Health and Safety Act of 1996. It is mandated to advise the Minister of Mineral Resources and Energy on occupational health and safety at mines, develop legislation, conduct research and liaise with other statutory bodies.

The council operates through a partnership between organised labour, employers and the DMRE. The council continues to focus on conducting research to provide solutions to occupational health and safety challenges. This entails developing technology to reduce noise in machines, and developing drone technology with a focus on wireless communication systems, surveying, mapping and navigation, health, safety and security, and integration for smart mining.

- **Mintek:** Its mandate, as set out in the Mineral Technology Act of 1989, is to maximise the value derived from South Africa's mineral resources through, among other things, research and development, technology transfer, and the creation of an enabling environment for the establishment and expansion of mineral industries.

To this end, Mintek develops appropriate, innovative technology for transfer to the industry, and provides test work, consultancy, analytical and mineralogical services to clients around the world. Skilled personnel are

key to the execution of meaningful research. Mintek will also continue with programmes to increase the academic qualifications of researchers and provide the necessary platforms to increase experience levels.

- **Council for Geoscience (CGS):** The CGS was established in terms of the Geoscience Act of 1993 to promote the search for and exploitation of minerals in South Africa. Its mandate is to generate, compile, curate and publish world-class geoscience knowledge products, provide geoscience-related services to the South African public and industry, and render advisory services related to geohazards and geo-environmental pollution. The data generated by the council enables key activities such as the assessment of environmental impacts from mining, geohazards and shale gas development.
- **South African State Diamond and Precious Minerals Regulator (SADPMR):** The SADPMR was established to administer the Diamonds Act of 1986 (as amended) and the Precious Metals Act of 2005. The Diamond Exchange and Export Centre (DEEC) was established by the SADPMR in terms of Section 59(b) of the Diamonds Second Amendment Act of 2005 and started operating on 14 January 2008.

One of the core functions of the SADPMR is to facilitate the buying, selling, exporting and importing of diamonds through its DEEC, which is a secure and controlled environment where goods are offered to other licensees. It plays a vital role in ensuring that unpolished diamond tenders are facilitated fairly to the local market.

- **State Diamond Trader (SDT):** The mandate of the SDT, as defined in the Diamonds Amendment Act of 2005, is to buy and sell rough diamonds, and to promote equitable access to and beneficiation of the country's diamond resources. It is listed as a schedule 3B public entity in terms of the PFMA of 1999.

The trader is mandated to conduct research, develop a client base, contribute to the growth of the local diamond beneficiation industry, and develop efficient means of marketing diamonds not suitable for local beneficiation. Over the medium term, the trader aimed to continue growing the local diamond beneficiation industry and increase the sale of rough diamonds to historically disadvantaged South Africans. The trader generates revenue from the sale of rough diamonds.

- **Sasol:** The international integrated chemicals and energy company develops and commercialises technologies, and builds and operates world-scale facilities to produce a range of high-value product streams, including liquid fuels, chemicals and low-carbon electricity.

- **Eskom:** It generates about 95% of the electricity used in South Africa and about 45% of the electricity used in Africa. It generates, transmits and distributes electricity to industrial, mining, commercial, agricultural and residential customers.
- **South African Gas Development Company (iGas):** It is the official state agency for the development of the hydrocarbon gas industry in southern Africa.
- **Petroleum Agency South Africa (PASA):** It promotes exploration for onshore and offshore oil and gas resources, and their optimal development. It regulates exploration and production activities, and acts as the custodian of the national petroleum exploration and production database.
- **Petronet:** It owns, operates, manages and maintains a network of 3 000 km of high-pressure petroleum and gas pipelines, on behalf of government.
- **National Energy Regulator of South Africa (NERSA):** It is the regulatory authority for electricity, piped gas and petroleum pipelines.
- **National Nuclear Regulator (NNR):** It derives its mandate from the NNR Act of 1999, which requires it to regulate safety standards for nuclear activities in South Africa. This includes establishing safety standards and regulatory practices, ensuring nuclear installations are safe by enforcing regulatory control, granting nuclear authorisations, conducting compliance inspections, and ensuring that provisions are in place for nuclear emergency planning.
- **Nuclear Energy Corporation of South Africa:** It is responsible for undertaking and promoting research and development in the field of nuclear energy and radiation sciences. It is also responsible for processing source material, including uranium enrichment, and cooperating with other institutions, locally and abroad, on nuclear and related matters.
- **South African National Energy Development Institute:** It was established in terms of the National Energy Act of 2008. It is mandated to direct, monitor and conduct applied energy research and development, and demonstrate and deploy specific measures to promote the uptake of green energy and energy efficiency in South Africa.
- **Central Energy Fund (CEF):** It is listed in schedule 2 of the Public Finance Management Act of 1999, and is governed by the CEF Act of 1977 and the Companies Act of 2008. Its mandate is to research, finance, develop and exploit appropriate energy solutions to contribute to South Africa's security of energy supply.

Through its subsidiaries, the fund is also mandated to finance and promote the acquisition of coal; exploit coal deposits; manufacture liquid fuel, oil and other products from coal; market these products; and acquire, generate, manufacture, market, distribute or research any other form of energy.

By mid-2023, the fund's subsidiaries are the Petroleum Oil and Gas Corporation of South Africa (PetroSA), the iGas, PASA, Oil Pollution Control South Africa, the Strategic Fuel Fund (SFF), the African Exploration Mining and Finance Corporation, ETA Energy Solutions and CCE Solutions.

Following the tabling of the Upstream Petroleum Resources Development Bill in Parliament, Cabinet approved the merger of iGas, PetroSA, and the SFF to form the South African National Petroleum Company (SANPC). The establishment of the SANPC is expected to give effect to the provisions enshrined in the said Bill, for the State to participate meaningfully in oil and gas developments.

- **PetroSA:** It is a wholly state-owned company of the Government of South Africa and registered as a commercial entity under the South African law. It is a subsidiary of the CEF.
- **National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute (NRWDI):** It was established in terms of the NRWDI Act of 2008 to manage the disposal of radioactive waste at the national level. The institute is responsible for the long-term care and disposal of radioactive waste in a safe, technically sound, socially acceptable, environmentally responsible and economically feasible manner.
- **Mining Qualifications Authority (MQA):** It is a statutory body established in terms of the Mine Health and Safety Act of 1996 and is a registered Sector Education and Training Authority for the mining and minerals sector in terms of the Skills Development Act of 1998, as amended.

It supports the objectives of the National Skills Development Plan 2020-2030, as guided by the Department of Higher Education and Training, and also supports the objectives of the Mining Charter in terms of the Minerals and Petroleum Resources Development Act of 1996. The MQA is responsible for administering a number of skills development initiatives.

Skills programmes and learnerships aim to develop a skilled and educated workforce whose skills are recognised and valued in terms of the National Qualifications Framework. This is to ensure that the mining and minerals sector has sufficient competent people who will improve health and safety, employment equity and increase productivity.

Mining

The mining industry contributes meaningfully to the Gross Domestic Product (GDP). Whilst production declined, the value of production registered R1.18 trillion in 2022, up from R1.1 trillion in 2021 on the back of strong global demand. The sector created 23 552 jobs between December 2021 and December 2022, resulting in the overall employment of 472 088 workers.

According to the South African Revenue Service, the mining sector contributed R89 billion in corporate tax in the 2021/22 financial year. A further contribution of mining to the country's revenue through royalties stood at R28.45 billion in the same period, keeping its percentage contribution to the GDP at 7.53%. This is a clear indication that mining remains a strong pillar of South Africa's economy.

As highlighted in the latest Fraser Institute Survey that placed South Africa in the worst position in recent memory, mining would contribute even better to the economy if the binding constraints in electricity, rail and port systems were urgently resolved. According to the survey, South Africa is in the bottom quartile on the investment attractiveness index.

One of the indices highlighted in the Fraser Institute survey is the transparency of licensing systems. To this end, the DMRE, in collaboration with the State Information Technology Agency, initiated a procurement process for a licensing system with integrity.

Mining and energy have also seen some tail winds with sizeable investments. By mid-2013, the department was following on the implementation of 56 investment commitments that were pledged into mining and energy sectors, at the annual investment conferences, amounting to a total of R397 billion. Among them are:

- R16.5 billion of De Beers for Venetia Mine;
- R6 billion of Exxaro in Grootegeluk;
- R636 million of Impala Platinum at the Two Rivers operation; and
- R175 million in the Steelpoortdrift Vanadium Project.

Mining is regarded as a sunrise industry ready to bolster South Africa's economy for years to come.

Energy

On the energy sector, the lifting of the threshold on embedded generation has unleashed green shoots such as the:

- Goldfields investment in a 50 MW photovoltaic plant at their South Deep Mine with an investment of R715 million. This power plant can supply the mine and the potential excess power ready to be sold to the grid, thus creating the prosumer market that will help close the supply and demand gap in the electricity market.
- The Seriti-Green R4 billion commitment of a 155-MW wind energy facility, which is a clear demonstration that the DMRE's targeted interventions are beginning to deliver green shoots in addressing the electricity challenges that the country faces.



**POLICE,
DEFENCE AND
INTELLIGENCE**

**OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
SOUTH AFRICA**

2022/23

Police, Defence and Intelligence

DEPARTMENT OF POLICE

The Department of Police is responsible for law-enforcement services, policy determination, direction and overall execution of the department's mandate in relation to relevant legislation. The Minister of Police is responsible for determining national policing policy (Section 206 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996) and the overall execution of the department's mandate, in relation to the key pieces of legislation.

Over the medium term, the department's key focus will be on implementing the national policing strategy. Key among the interventions that this strategy proposes are: improving community safety; reducing gender-based violence and femicide (GBVF); and combating serious and organised crimes.

Improving community safety

To ensure a coordinated response to building safer communities, the National Policing Strategy was approved in 2022/23. In line with the strategy, over the period ahead, the department will focus on stabilising crime in the top 30 high-contact crime areas that collectively contribute about 50% of reported contact crimes across the country.

This includes combating the various contributors to crime, such as illegal firearms, liquor, drugs, illicit mining and undocumented foreign nationals. In support of this work, the department aimed to ensure that the stations in the top 30 high-contact crime areas have optimal human resources and sufficient operational equipment.

The department also planned to develop and implement a detective service recovery plan over the medium term. The purpose of the plan is to improve the detection of contact crimes at police stations through better case docket management, which is in turn expected to improve communication between investigating officers and victims, and cooperation with the National Prosecuting Authority.

Combating GBVF

Over the medium term, the department's Visible Policing and Detective Services programmes planned to implement interventions in line with the national policing strategy that are aimed at combating GBVF and improving support to victims.

Interventions include: establishing GBV desks in all police stations and providing in-service training to designated employees working at these desks; developing, implementing and monitoring action plans on GBV and sexual offences at stations in the top 30 GBV hotspots; and the continued implementation of measures to eradicate the DNA tracing and verification backlog linked to crime scenes, as this is critical as supporting evidence in investigations, as well as for updating the DNA database.

The department will also ensure that every police station has a dedicated, victim-friendly room for victims of GBV, including sexual assault.

Addressing serious and organised crimes

In line with interventions identified in the national policing strategy to prevent and investigate crime that threatens the economy, activities in the Detective Services programme over the medium term were aimed at addressing the increase in crimes targeted at critical infrastructure, such as during local construction projects. To combat this problem, 20 economic infrastructure task teams have been established in identified hotspots. The multidisciplinary teams encompass visible policing, crime intelligence and detective services.

To ensure a coordinated approach to combating corruption in the public and private sectors over the period ahead, the Directorate for Priority Crime Investigation (DPCI) was expected to continue working closely with government stakeholders and agencies such as the anti-corruption task team, the national anti-corruption advisory council and the multidisciplinary fusion centre, which targets priority financial crimes. This includes implementing recommendations from the state capture commission.

The directorate, along with the detective services and crime intelligence units, has established a steering committee to coordinate all matters related to the investigation and combating of cybercrime. The committee has developed a strategy and standard operating procedures for investigation in the police, as required in terms of Section 26 of the Cybercrime Act of 2020.

The committee aimed to collaborate with other national and international law enforcement agencies over the medium term to enhance investigations through the establishment of cyber-investigation disciplines that include online, open source, social media, digital forensic, intrusion and unauthorised access investigations. These interventions were expected to enable the department to successfully close 72% of registered serious organised crime-related project investigations per year over the next three years.

Preventing, combating and investigating money laundering and terror financing

The DPCI aimed to intensify its focus on combating money laundering and terror financing, and on investigating serious corruption and other high-risk areas such as narcotics, tax evasion, fraud and corruption, and other matters referred by the Special Investigating Unit.

These priorities are in line with the directorate's strategic and operational plans, and the findings outlined in the Financial Action Task Force's (FATF) evaluation report of South Africa. These include the need for law enforcement agencies to: address risks, threats and vulnerabilities relating to money laundering and terror financing; implement proactive identification and investigation methods for money laundering networks and professional enablers; address internal capacity and skills gaps; and strengthen the use of financial intelligence in

money laundering and terror financing investigations. As such, over the medium term, the directorate aimed to increase the number of requests to the Financial Intelligence Centre on money laundering from 86 to 124, and on terror financing from 151 to 218.

To implement the FATF standards and enhance the directorate's capacity in strategic competencies, an additional 2 647 posts are expected to be filled in 2023/24 and 2024/25.

The DPC also planned to leverage existing capacity and financial intelligence by adopting a proactive approach of identifying and pursuing high-level, complex and serious cases of money laundering.

The National Police Commissioner answers directly to the Minister of Police.

Entities reporting to the Minister of Police are the:

- Civilian Secretariat for Police Service (CSPS)
- Independent Police Investigative Directorate (IPID)
- Private Security Industry Regulatory Authority (PSIRA)
- South African Police Service (SAPS).

Civilian Secretariat for Police Service

The CSPS was established in terms of the CSPS Act of 2011 and Section 208 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, which provides for the establishment of a civilian secretariat for the police service to function under the direction of the Minister of Police.

In terms of the Act, the secretariat's mandate is to conduct civilian oversight of the police service and provide policy and strategic support to the minister, including administrative support for international obligations. The Act also makes the secretariat responsible for monitoring the implementation of the Domestic Violence Act of 1998 by the SAPS.

Over the medium term, the department planned to continue developing policies and legislation for the police sector; facilitate events such as imbizos and public participation programmes to encourage community participation in the fight against crime; and assess and monitor the performance of the police service in relation to its constitutional mandate and other legal prescripts affecting its work, such as the Domestic Violence Act of 1998.

The department planned to finalise six bills over the medium term – the SAPS Amendment Bill, the IPID Amendment Bill, the Stock Theft Amendment Bill, the Firearms Control Amendment Bill, the Second-hand Goods Amendment Bill and the Civilian Secretariat for Police Service Amendment Bill. The Criminal Law (Forensic Procedures) Amendment Bill and the Protection of Constitutional Democracy Against Terrorist and Related Activities Amendment Bill, which were finalised in 2022/23, were expected to be enacted over the period ahead.

The department also planned to consult on and finalise the development of the national policing policy over the medium term, which will entail reviewing existing policing policy to identify gaps and make policy proposals to fast-track the transformation and professionalisation of the police service. It also planned to

continue working with key stakeholders such as The Presidency, the Department of Cooperative Governance and premiers' offices to facilitate the implementation of the integrated crime and violence prevention strategy.

The department aimed to facilitate 24 izimbizo and public participation programmes in municipalities over the next three years, and conduct three anti-crime campaigns per year to enhance communities' awareness of crime prevention and other interventions such as community policing and safety forums.

As part of its efforts to transform and improve case management in the police related to GBV, the department aimed to assess and compile two reports per year over the medium term on the SAPS's implementation of and compliance with the Domestic Violence Act of 1998.

Independent Police Investigative Directorate

The IPID exercises its functions in accordance with the IPID Act of 2011. The Act gives effect to the provisions of Section 206(6) of the Constitution, which provides for the establishment of an independent police complaints body that must investigate any alleged misconduct of, or offence committed by, a member of the police service.

The thrust of the directorate's work is to investigate serious and priority crimes allegedly committed by members of the SAPS and Municipal Police Services.

The Act grants the directorate an extended mandate and changes the focus of the directorate's work from a complaints-driven organisation to one that prioritises investigations. It also places stringent obligations on the SAPS and Municipal Police Services to report matters that must be investigated by the directorate, and ensures that the disciplinary recommendations made by the directorate are implemented.

Over the medium term, the directorate aimed to focus on the development of a new case management system; prioritise the investigation and finalisation of cases where the victims are women, children and people with disabilities; and improve access to its services.

The number of personnel in the directorate was expected to increase from 393 in 2022/23 to 430 in 2025/26, mainly due to the appointment of interns. The directorate will continue to realign its organisational structure and streamline its functions, where necessary, for the optimal use of its limited human resources.

Only core posts, such as for investigators, that enable the directorate to address its case backlog and improve its services are expected to be filled over the period ahead.

Implementing a new case management system

The directorate's current case management system requires costly regular enhancements and updates to suit the changing nature of its operations, as well as the payment of licensing fees. To limit these costs, over the medium term, the directorate plans to develop a new system, which is expected to integrate seamlessly with similar systems used by other law enforcement agencies in the

justice cluster to enable information sharing and collaboration on investigations. Once implemented, the new system will enable the directorate to record and classify cases according to specific categories of importance, such as GBV, to ensure easier tracking and reporting.

The system is also expected to help the directorate address inconsistencies in its performance reporting. To save on licensing costs and future upgrades, the directorate will own the system upon completion and updates to its specifications will be developed in-house. The new system was expected to be developed at a cost of R15 million.

Strengthening the investigation of cases where victims are vulnerable groups

In recognition that women, children and people with disabilities are particularly vulnerable in cases of death, rape, assault and torture resulting from police action, over the medium-term period, the directorate plans to give these cases high priority.

The new case management system will be key in enabling the directorate to track and report on the progress made. This includes the identification of areas where such cases are predominant in order to make appropriate interventions and recommendations to the police.

Improving access to services

To expand its footprint and improve access to its services, in 2022/23, the directorate partnered with provincial community safety departments in Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal and Western Cape to establish regional and district offices.

This was part of implementing the directorate's broader district model, which entails sharing office space, collaborating with provincial community safety departments on investigations and monitoring police performance.

In addition to 11 district offices, the directorate has established a national task team to focus on implementing the district model more broadly across provinces over the medium term. The task team aimed to work with provinces to identify additional office space that can be used by the directorate to improve access to its services, especially in provinces with a high number of cases.

The task team will also explore the viability of partnerships with other provincial state entities.

Private Security Industry Regulatory Authority

The PSIRA was established in terms of Section 2 of the Private Security Industry Regulation Act of 2001, which replaced the Security Officers Act of 1987. The authority is mandated to regulate the private security industry and exercise control over security service providers in the public and national interest, as well as in the interest of the private security industry itself.

Over the medium term, the authority aimed to continue focusing on the implementation of its digital transformation strategy. This entails rolling out an

online registration and training system, and upgrading its financial system. The online registration system was being implemented, with full integration with the authority's other systems set to take place over the next three years.

Given dependencies on external service providers and technical limitations with the rolling out and testing of systems related to the digital migration process, the authority has set performance outcomes moderately over the medium term. As such, the turnaround times for the processing of applications for security businesses and security officers over the period ahead are set to remain at four and 18, respectively.

Other initiatives planned over the medium-term period include professionalising the security industry by reviewing and upgrading training material, introducing a reaction unit to curb noncompliance with the Private Security Industry Regulation Act of 2001 and related regulations by the security industry, and establishing a business intelligence unit in the authority's forensic and ethics department to ensure correct data analysis during forensic investigations.

The PSIRA also planned to decentralise and restructure its services over the medium term to ensure greater financial stability. Only critical vacant posts, such as for business intelligence officials, were expected to be filled over the medium term.

More than 90% (R1.7 billion) of the authority's revenue over the medium-term period was set to be generated through the collection of annual and registration fees from private security businesses and security officers, and the remainder from the sale of renewal certificates, the training of security officers, and accreditation fees collected from training providers.

South African Police Service

The SAPS derives its powers and functions from section 205 of the Constitution and from the SAPS Act of 1995. This legislation regulates the police service in terms of its core functions, which are to prevent, investigate and combat crime; maintain public order; protect and secure the inhabitants of South Africa and their property; and uphold and enforce the law.

The National Commissioner is the Accounting Officer of the SAPS. Deputy National Commissioners (under whom the divisions and components of the SAPS fall) and provincial commissioners (under whom the cluster and station commanders fall) report to the National Commissioner.

The SAPS's policing objectives, in accordance with the provisions of Section 205 of the Constitution, are to:

- prevent, combat and investigate crime;
- maintain public order;
- protect and secure the inhabitants of South Africa and their property; and
- uphold and enforce the law.

The vision of the SAPS is to create a safe and secure environment for all people in South Africa. The mission of the SAPS is to:

- prevent and combat anything that may threaten the safety and security of

any community;

- investigate any crimes that threaten the safety and security of any community;
- ensure offenders are brought to justice; and
- participate in efforts to address the root causes of crime.

Over the medium term, the department planned to focus on improving community safety, reducing violence against women and children, and combating organised crime.

DEFENCE

The Department of Defence (DOD) derives its mandate from Section 200 of the Constitution; the Defence Act of 2002, as amended by the Defence Amendment Act of 2010; the 1996 *White Paper on Defence*; and the 2015 South African Defence Review. The department is required to provide, manage, prepare and employ defence capabilities that are commensurate with the needs of South Africa.

Over the medium term, the department planned to continue focusing on protecting the country's people and territorial integrity through internal and external operations such as safeguarding its borders, providing maritime security, and providing support to the SAPS and other peace-support operations in the Democratic Republic of the Congo and Mozambique.

Over the medium-term period, the South African National Defence Force (SANDF) planned to continue maintaining 15 landward subunits to facilitate border safeguarding in Free State, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, Mpumalanga, Northern Cape and North West.

Additional investments in vehicle and technology enhancements to maximise the impact of the subunits in reducing transnational crimes, the illegal flow of undocumented migrants and illicit economic activities are expected to amount to R500 million in 2024/25 and R200 million in 2025/26 in the Force Employment programme.

To ensure maritime safety, in each year over the period ahead, the South African Navy will continue to conduct a targeted four coastal patrols and spend 8 000 hours at sea. The procuring or upgrading of the medium air transport capability is expected to ensure that 12 000 hours are flown per year over the medium term. This was expected to enhance the SANDF's capability to transport troops and equipment during urgent internal and external deployments.

To ensure the department remains within the expenditure ceiling for compensation of employees, it planned to continue to implement various human resource reforms over the medium term.

These included implementing the voluntary severance packages for SANDF personnel at an estimated cost of R800 million in 2023/24, reducing the number of reserve force person days to 1.9 million per year, recruiting military skills development system intakes every alternate calendar year, and capping the annual increases of regimental and operational allowances.

DEPARTMENT OF MILITARY VETERANS (DMV)

The DMV derives its mandate from the Military Veterans Act of 2011, which requires it to provide national policy and standards on socio-economic support to military veterans and their dependants, including benefits and entitlements to help realise a dignified, unified, empowered and self-sufficient community of military veterans.

Acknowledging military veterans' contribution to the creation of South Africa's democracy has the potential to deepen social cohesion and national unity while redressing the inequities of the past. As such, over the medium term, the department planned to focus on providing military veterans and their dependants with access to key benefits such as pensions, housing, healthcare and education, training and skills development programmes.

Armaments Corporation of South Africa (Armcor)

Armcor derives its mandate from the Armcor Act of 2003. Its mission is to meet the acquisition, maintenance and disposal needs of the DOD and other clients in terms of defence matériel and related products and services. In this way, the corporation maintains strategic capabilities and technologies and promotes the local defence-related industry, ensuring that the SANDF receives quality equipment to carry out its mandate.

Over the medium term, the corporation planned to continue focusing on meeting the department's defence matériel requirements, as well as its requirements pertaining to technology, research, development, analysis, tests and evaluation.

To meet these requirements, Armcor aimed to ensure that 95% of the department's capital and technology requirements over the medium term were converted into orders placed and executed.

Denel

Denel was incorporated as a private company in 1992 in terms of the Companies Act of 1973, with the South African Government as its sole shareholder. It operates in the military aerospace and landward defence environment and provides strategic defence equipment.

The company's broad focus over the medium term will be on implementing its turnaround plan, which entails rolling out its new operating model, restructuring and optimising its cost structure. The new operating model reduces Denel's structure from six core business units to three – engineering, manufacturing, and maintenance and overhaul.

This change will not only result in decreased expenditure, but in the improved allocation of critical resources. It will also require that the company accelerate its disposal of non-core assets and businesses, improve supply chain policies and align its IT infrastructure with its new organisational structure.

Castle Control Board

The Castle Control Board primarily derives its mandate from the Castle Management Act of 1993, which requires it to preserve and protect the military and cultural heritage of the Castle of Good Hope. Aspects of the board's mandate are also derived from the Defence Endowment Property and Account Act of 1922 and the National Heritage Resources Act of 1999.

Over the medium term, the board aimed to implement its revenue optimisation strategy with the aim of maintaining its viability as a self-sufficient entity. The primary means of achieving this goal is to optimise the heritage tourism potential of the Castle of Good Hope and increase its accessibility to the broader public.

Accordingly, key activities over the medium term include delivering a comprehensive range of visitor services. These included an improved tourist guide script, better curated museums and exhibitions, an upgraded information centre and website, better and clearer signage to allow for effective self-guided tours and directions to the site, and an improved security system in and around the precinct to ensure the safety and wellbeing of all visitors.

INTELLIGENCE SERVICES

The mandate of the State Security Agency (SSA) is to provide the government with intelligence on domestic and foreign threats or potential threats to national stability, the constitutional order, and the safety and well-being of South Africans.

Examples of such threats are terrorism, sabotage and subversion. This allows government to implement policies to deal with potential threats and to better understand existing threats and thus improve their policies.

The SSA comprises the:

- Domestic Branch (formerly the NIA)
- Foreign Branch (formerly the SASS)
- South African National Academy of Intelligence
- National Communications Centre
- Office for Interception Centre
- COMSEC.

In October 2022, President Cyril Ramaphosa appointed Mr Imtiaz Fazel as the Inspector-General of Intelligence for a period of five years, with effect from 1 November 2022, following approval by the National Assembly of Mr Fazel's nomination for the position.



PROVINCES

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO **SOUTH AFRICA**

2022/23

Provinces

South Africa has nine provinces, which vary considerably in size. The smallest is tiny and crowded Gauteng, a highly urbanised region, and the largest the vast, arid and empty Northern Cape, which takes up almost a third of South Africa's total land area.

Each province has its own Legislature, Premier and Executive Council. The country has common boundaries with Namibia, Botswana and Zimbabwe, while Mozambique and Eswatini lie to the north-east.

Completely enclosed by South African territory in the south-east is the mountain kingdom of Lesotho. South Africa has three capitals:

- Cape Town, in the City of Cape Town Metropolitan Municipality, Western Cape, is the legislative capital and is where the country's Parliament is found.
- Bloemfontein, in Mangaung Metropolitan Municipality, Free State, is the judicial capital and home to the Supreme Court of Appeal.
- Pretoria, in the City of Tshwane Metropolitan Municipality, Gauteng, is the administrative capital, and the ultimate capital of the country. It is home to the Union Buildings and a large proportion of the Public Service.

Eastern Cape

The Eastern Cape, lying on the south-eastern South African coast, is a region of great natural beauty, particularly the rugged cliffs, rough seas and dense green bush of the stretch known as the Wild Coast.

In the Eastern Cape, various floral habitats meet. Along the coast, the northern tropical forests intermingle with the more temperate woods of the south. The province is serviced by airports situated in Gqeberha (formerly Port Elizabeth), East London, Mthatha and Bhisho.

The top 15 iconic tourist destinations have been digitised and are available on the virtual platforms, where potential tourists could virtually tour them. The province has since renamed a number of government facilities and places after the legends who fought against apartheid:

- The Bhisho State House is now Lillian Diedericks House, (Bhisho), Lillian Diedericks Municipal Building.
- In the Nelson Mandela Metro, the Brister House has been renamed after Mama Lillian Diedericks, Port Elizabeth Airport to Dawid Stuurman Airport and East London Airport to King Phalo Airport.

Capital: Bhisho

Principal languages:

isiXhosa 82,7%

Afrikaans 10,3%

English 3,9%

Population: 6 676 691

Percentage share of the total population: 11,1%

Area: 168 966 km²



Source: Stats SA's Census 2022.

Free State

The Free State – a province of wide horizons and blue skies, farmland, mountains, goldfields and widely dispersed towns – lies in the heart of South Africa. Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this immense rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see. Mining, particularly gold, is the biggest employer, followed by manufacturing.

The Free State also produces high-quality diamonds from its kimberlite pipes and fissures, and the country's largest deposit of bentonite is found in the Koppies district. The National Development Plan has intensified the mining potential that still exists in the goldfields region of Matjhabeng in the Lejweleputswa District as a job intervention zone.

The capital, Bloemfontein, houses the Supreme Court of Appeal, a leading university and some top schools. Important towns include Welkom, Sasolburg, Odendaalsrus, Kroonstad, Parys, Phuthaditjhaba, Bethlehem. The charming village of Clarens situated in the rolling foothills of the Maluti Mountains. Some of South Africa's most valued San rock art can be found in the Free State.

Other key tourist attractions in the province include the majestic Golden Gate National Park, the annual air show in Bethlehem, the Cherry Festival in Ficksburg, and the Fauresmith International Endurance Ride equestrian event.

The annual Mangaung African Cultural Festival, known as Macufe, is hosted in partnership with the Tourism Authority and the Performing Arts Centre of the Free State. The Vredefort Dome, 10 km in diameter, is on the United Nations' (UN) World Heritage Site List.

Capital: Bloemfontein

Principal languages:

Sesotho 71,9%

Afrikaans 10,9%

isiXhosa 5,7%

Population: 2 921 611

Percentage share of the total population: 4,8%

Area: 129 825 km²



Source: Stats SA's Census 2022.

Gauteng

Gauteng is the smallest of South Africa's nine provinces but comprises the largest share of the South African population. Financial and business services, logistics, manufacturing, property, telecommunications and trade are some of the most important economic sectors.

The province is an integrated industrial complex with major areas of economic activity in three sub-regional areas, namely the Vaal Triangle; the East, West and Central Rand, and Pretoria. Johannesburg houses the Johannesburg Stock Exchange Limited, the largest securities exchange in Africa.

Most overseas visitors enter South Africa via OR Tambo International Airport. Pretoria is the administrative capital of South Africa, and home to the Union Buildings and most of the national government departments.

Capital: Johannesburg

Principal languages:

IsiZulu 23,0%

Afrikaans 10,1%

Sesotho 12,7%

English 11,3%

Population: 16 098 571

Percentage share of the total population: 26,6%

Area: 18 178 km²



Source: Stats SA's Census 2022.



KwaZulu-Natal

KwaZulu-Natal, one of the country's most popular holiday destinations, is the province with the second largest population. This verdant region includes South Africa's lush subtropical east coast. Washed by the warm Indian Ocean, it stretches from Port Edward in the south, and northwards to the Mozambique boundary. In addition to the magnificent coastline, there is the sweeping savanna in the east, and the majestic Drakensberg mountain range in the west that offers some of the country's most awe-inspiring landscapes. A vast sweep of basalt

summits and buttresses was formally granted World Heritage status in November 2000 and renamed uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park.

Visitors can enter the province through the King Shaka International Airport at La Mercy, north of Durban or use the extensive national road network. There are also two major harbours – the port of Durban, which is one the busiest in Africa, and Richards Bay, which is an important coal-export harbour.

There are several tertiary institutions of learning, including the University of KwaZulu- Natal, University of Zululand, Mangosuthu University of Technology and Durban University of Technology. KwaZulu-Natal is the only province with a monarchy specifically provided for in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996.

| | | | |
|--|------------------------|---|---|
| Capital: Pietermaritzburg | | | |
| Principal languages: | | | |
| isiZulu | 82,5% |  |  |
| English | 12,5% | | |
| Afrikaans | 1,0% | | |
| Population: | 11 538 325 | | |
| Percentage share of the total population: | | 19,0% | |
| Area: | 94 361 km ² | | |

Source: Stats SA's Census 2022.

Limpopo

Limpopo, South Africa's northernmost province, borders onto Mozambique, Zimbabwe and Botswana, making it the ideal entrance to Africa. Named after the Limpopo River that flows along its northern border, the province is rich in wildlife, spectacular scenery and a wealth of historical and cultural treasures.

This province is in the Savanna Biome, an area of mixed grassland and trees, which is generally known as bushveld. The province's natural resources include more than 50 provincial reserves, as well as several private game reserves.

The largest section of the Kruger National Park is situated along the eastern boundary of Limpopo with Mozambique.

Capital: Polokwane**Principal languages:**

Sepedi 56,0%

Tshivenda 17,1%

Xitsonga 16,6%

Population: 5 941 439**Percentage share of the total population:** 9,8%**Area:** 125 755 km²**Source:** Stats SA's Census 2022.**Mpumalanga**

Mpumalanga means Place where the sun rises. Owing to its spectacular scenic beauty and abundance of wildlife, the province is one of South Africa's major tourist destinations. Mpumalanga falls mainly within the Grassland Biome. The escarpment and the Lowveld form a transitional zone between this grassland area and the Savanna Biome.

The area has a network of excellent roads and railway connections, making it highly accessible. Mpumalanga is also served by a number of small airports, such as the Kruger Mpumalanga International Airport. Mbombela is the capital of the province and the administrative and business centre of the Lowveld. Other important towns are eMalahleni, Standerton, Piet Retief, Malalane, Ermelo, Barberton and Sabie.

Large-scale manufacturing occurs especially in the northern Highveld area, particularly chrome-alloy and steel manufacturing. The Barberton Makhonjwa Mountains were added to the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization's prestigious World Heritage List in July 2018, becoming the 10th World Heritage Site for South Africa. The site comprises 40% of the Barberton Greenstone Belt, one of the world's oldest geological structures. The Barberton Makhonjwa Mountains represent the best-preserved succession of volcanic and sedimentary rock dating back 3,25 to 3,6 billion years.

Capital: Mbombela**Principal languages:**

Siswati 29,1%

isiZulu 28,8%

Xitsonga 9,6%

isiNdebele 10,1%

Population: 4 720 497**Percentage share of the total population:** 7,8%**Area:** 76 495 km²**Source:** Stats SA's Census 2022.

Northern Cape

The Northern Cape is the largest province in South Africa. However, it remains the province with the smallest share of the South African population. It is noted for its San rock art, diamond diggings, 4X4 safaris and the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park.

It is a vast stretch of semi-desert land. The province is renowned for its spectacular display of spring flowers, which, for a short period every year, attracts thousands of tourists. Sutherland hosts the southern hemisphere's largest astronomical observatory, the multinational-sponsored Southern African Large Telescope. The Northern Cape is one of two sites to host the Square Kilometre Array radio-telescope, the largest and most advanced radio telescope in the world.

Among many other benefits, the province's tourism and hospitality industry is profiting from the project, as scientists and other interested parties are flooding into the town of Carnarvon. Electrical power generation presents an opportunity for greater economic diversification and growth in the province.

Capital: Kimberley

Principal languages:

Afrikaans 56,8%

Setswana 33,4%

Population: 1 308 734

Percentage share of the total population: 2,2%

Area: 372 889 km²



Source: Stats SA's Census 2022.

North West

North West lies in the north of South Africa, on the Botswana border, fringed by the Kalahari desert in the west, Gauteng to the east, and the Free State to the south. Sun City, the Pilanesberg National Park, the Madikwe Game Reserve, the Cradle of Humankind Site, the Taung Heritage Site, the De Wildt Cheetah and Wildlife Trust and the Lesedi Cultural Village are some of the tourist attractions.

Some of the largest cattle herds in the world are found at Stellaland near Vryburg, which explains why this area is often referred to as the Texas of South Africa. Marico is also cattle country.

North West is South Africa's major producer of white maize. Mining contributes immensely to North West's economy and the South African mining industry. It is known as the Platinum Province due to its abundant mineral riches of platinum, chrome and the platinum group metals.

It is also home to a strong dimension stone sector, due to the riches of its slate, marble and granite deposits. The Rustenburg and Brits districts produce 94% of the country's platinum. In addition to granite, marble, fluorspar and diamonds, the province also produces a quarter of South Africa's gold.

Capital: Mahikeng**Principal languages:**

Setswana 71,5%

Afrikaans 8,96%

isiXhosa 5,51%

Population: 4 186 984**Percentage share of the total population:** 6,9%**Area:** 104 882 km²**Source:** Stats SA's Census 2022.**Western Cape**

Situated on the south-western tip of Africa, the Western Cape with its wide beaches and breath-taking scenery, complemented by a rich variety of cultures, historical landmarks, world-class restaurants and entertainment, is a world-famous tourist destination.

With several local attractions and venues, the Western Cape is one of the domestic travel destinations in South Africa preferred by foreign tourists. The province is bordered by two oceans – the Indian Ocean to the south and the Atlantic Ocean to the west.

It is also well known for its scenic beauty and a wealth of flora and fauna. With an abundance of hiking trails you have a choice between coastal or mountain hikes. Table Mountain, the Cape winelands, Robben Island and the Kirstenbosch Botanical Gardens are among the province's most popular tourist attractions.

Other popular attractions include the Victoria and Alfred (V&A) Waterfront, the Company's Gardens, the District Six Museum, the houses of Parliament and the South African National Gallery.

Capital: Cape Town**Principal languages:**

Afrikaans 46,6%

isiXhosa 31,1%

English 19,6%

Population: 7 212 142**Percentage share of the total population:** 11,9%**Area:** 129 462 km²**Source:** Stats SA's Census 2022.



**SCIENCE AND
INNOVATION**

**OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
SOUTH AFRICA**

2022/23

Science and Innovation

The Department of Science and Innovation (DSI) derives its mandate from the 1996 *White Paper on Science and Technology*, which introduced the concept of the national system of innovation, a set of interacting organisations and policies through which South Africa creates, acquires, diffuses and puts into practice new knowledge to help achieve individual and collective goals.

A coordinated and efficient national system of innovation will help the country achieve its national development priorities by promoting change through innovation. This will enable all South Africans to enjoy the economic, socio-political and intellectual benefits of science, technology and innovation.

Over the medium term, the department planned to focus on providing funding for research infrastructure to strengthen South Africa's research and innovation capabilities, including implementing the national space strategy; developing human capital; and advancing innovation to improve South Africa's competitiveness in the global market through measures such as supporting emerging farmers.

Strengthening research infrastructure and innovation capabilities

In recognising that the availability of adequate research infrastructure is vital for the development of a robust and competitive national system of innovation, the DSI will continue to fund projects that are in line with the South African research infrastructure roadmap.

These include constructing large national infrastructure platforms and facilities; acquiring scientific equipment; and developing pilot plants, technology demonstrators and specialised facilities such as drug development and aerospace platforms.

The department's work is also geared towards strengthening research capabilities. Key among these are the South African National Space Agency's (SANSA) space infrastructure hub project, a multiyear infrastructure development project that involves the development of space infrastructure such as satellite imagery to map geographical information, satellite-based augmentation systems and earth observation satellites; and the Square Kilometre Array (SKA), which is a global endeavour to construct the world's largest and most sensitive wavelength radio telescope.

Over the medium-term period, substantial allocations were expected to be made to the SANSA for the space infrastructure hub project and to the South African Radio Astronomy Observatory (SARAO) for the expansion of the SKA.

The SARAO is a national facility managed by the National Research Foundation (NRF) and incorporates all national radio astronomy telescopes and programmes.

Developing human capital

Human capital is key to the development of a national system of innovation that is globally competitive and responsive to South Africa's developmental needs. In recognition of this, the department provides support through granting

postgraduate bursaries and scholarships; sponsoring internships; and funding emerging and established researchers, including for strategic instruments such as the South African research chairs initiative and centres of excellence projects.

To date, the department has awarded 257 research chairs, 240 of which are operational. Centres of excellence serve as hubs that draw a range of universities and science councils together to tackle challenges in areas such as health, food security, human development, energy and biodiversity.

Advancing innovation to improve South Africa's competitiveness in the global market

Over the medium term, the department planned to advance innovation and address key competitiveness challenges, including market sustainability and facilitating access to new export markets. To achieve this, it intended to support 15 commercial outputs in designated areas such as healthcare and 85 technology demonstrations, prototypes, products and services each year over the period ahead.

These included locally developed fermentation-based skin care products and cotton baling machines for small-scale farmers. The department also planned to financially support black emerging farmers; train artisans in the space, energy and bioeconomy sectors; train graduates through experiential learning opportunities in the energy sector; and support learnership initiatives in publicly financed research and development (R&D) institutions.

Hydrogen Society Roadmap (HSRM)

To support innovation in South Africa's energy markets, the DSI launched the HSRM in February 2022 to unlock the potential of new sources of clean energy to facilitate a just transition from a carbon-intensive to a carbon neutral economy.

Through the HSRM, the DSI have unlocked the potential of new sources of clean energy to facilitate a just transition from a carbon-intensive to a carbon-neutral economy. The department has also registered the Hydrogen Valley Programme with Infrastructure South Africa under Strategic Integrated Projects in December 2022.

The South African hydrogen economy journey started in 2007 when Cabinet approved the national hydrogen and fuel cells research, development and innovation Hydrogen South Africa Strategy (HySA Strategy). The DSI is implementing the HySA Strategy through the 15-year HySA Programme.

The HySA Programme, on its 14th year of implementation in 2023, has made significant contribution towards the creation of a Hydrogen Economy in South Africa. This has been achieved through the creation of knowledge, technological expertise and human resources development.

Square Kilometre Array

The South African and Australian governments are co-signatories to co-host the SKA Observatory array telescopes and associated infrastructures over the period

2021-2030. Through the SKA Observatory, South Africa will be producing a whole new generation of science and scientists, many of whom are being trained in the country.

By mid-2023, South Africa had begun with the construction of the SKA project and the construction, together with that of Australia, forms the biggest-ever radio telescope array, at a cost of US\$2, 2 billion.

It is estimated that these two sites will together create 710 petabytes of science data when fully operational in 2029. It is therefore expected that astronomers can get 50 years or more of transformational science through the SKA. In South Africa, 133 dish antennas will be added to the existing 64-dish MeerKAT precursor telescope, totalling nearly 200 dishes, to form the SKA's mid-frequency telescope array.

A total of 1 400 students have been supported through the SKA bursary programme by mid-2023. South African companies and the South African Radio Astronomy Observatory are expected to benefit immensely from the rolling out of this infrastructure, which includes the building of the SKA Exploratorium in Carnarvon in the Northern Cape.

The initiative is expected to boost science awareness and outreach, stimulate science tourism in the region and create employment. The MeerKAT telescope, built by South Africans, will continue to do world-class scientific work until it is fully integrated into the SKA in the next five to seven years.

By mid-2023, more than 180 scientific articles based on MeerKAT observations had been published in leading scientific journals. Among the groundbreaking results is the discovery of “Nkalakatha”, a powerful radio laser, the most distant of its kind, with the faint radio waves now detected in the Karoo emitted in colliding galaxies before the Earth was even formed.

Entities:

Academy of Science of South Africa (ASSAf)

The ASSAf was established in terms of the ASSAf Act of 2001, as amended, to promote outstanding achievements in all fields of scientific inquiry, recognise excellence, and provide evidence-based scientific advice to government and other stakeholders.

Over the medium term, the academy aimed to enhance South Africa's capacity to produce and publish research, provide evidence-based policy advice to government, and increase the quality and visibility of South African research publications. This entailed undertaking various consensus studies in the categories of health, education, climate change, energy, the science-policy nexus, biosafety and biosecurity, poverty reduction, genderresponsive issues, young people and people with disabilities.

To complement this work, the academy aimed to host 15 lectures on scientific topics, form 12 strategic partnerships with players in the science community and publish six journal titles on the Scientific Electronic Library Online open-access platform over the medium-term period.

Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR)

The CSIR was established in 1945 and is governed in terms of the Scientific Research Council Act of 1988. The council fosters industrial and scientific development in the national interest through multidisciplinary research and technological innovation to improve the ability of the state to efficiently deliver basic services in fields such as health, education, social security, energy and shelter to all South Africans, and, in doing so, reduce inequality.

Over the medium term, the CSIR planned to focus on conducting high-quality and relevant research, pursuing technological innovation to foster industrial and scientific development, and building on industrial development opportunities in fields such as pharmaceutical innovation and agro-processing.

To achieve this, the council aimed to support 56 registered patents and publish 960 journal articles over the medium term. The CSIR also planned to implement a range of research, development and innovation programmes in areas such as health, energy, defence and security.

Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC)

The Human Sciences Research Council was established in 1968 to undertake, promote and coordinate research in the human and social sciences. The council is mandated to initiate, undertake and foster strategic, basic and applied research in human sciences; and address developmental challenges by gathering, analysing and publishing relevant data, especially through projects linked to collaborative programmes geared towards the public sector.

The council's research outputs are widely disseminated to support policy development at all levels of government. Over the medium term, the council planned to continue focusing on producing research that serves the public; contributing to good governance and public service delivery; helping to address the challenges of poverty, inequality and unemployment; and building the capacity of scholars and researchers.

National Research Foundation

The NRF was established in terms of the NRF Act of 1998, as amended. In terms of this legislation, the foundation is mandated to fund research, develop human resources and provide research facilities to enable knowledge creation, innovation and development in all fields of science and technology. It is also mandated to promote indigenous knowledge.

Over the medium-term period, the NRF planned focus on implementing its 10-year strategy, Vision 2030. This involves interventions to catalyse transformation in the science and technology system through measures such as creating grant funding instruments that focus on women and black researchers; scaling up the development of a research and innovation workforce for renewing, regenerating and replenishing the cohort of South African researchers; establishing a transformed knowledge workforce with a greater diversity of people and ideas to lead the knowledge enterprise; and advancing the international competitiveness

of the scientific workforce. There is also new funding for major infrastructure investments for the SKA, which includes the science processing and regional centres, the science operations centre building, the engineering operations centre building, and fencing for the MeerKAT National Park.

South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions (SACNASP)

The SACNASP is the legislated regulatory body for natural science practitioners in South Africa. The natural sciences encompass a wide range of scientific fields covering all of the basic sciences and many of their applied derivatives. Its mission is to establish, direct, sustain and ensure a high level of professionalism and ethical conscience amongst its scientists.

South African National Space Agency

The SANSA was established in terms of the SANSA Act of 2008. The agency became operational in 2010 and is broadly required to promote the peaceful use of space, foster international cooperation in space-related activities, and facilitate the creation of an environment conducive to space technology and industrial development.

Space services provide an indispensable tool for the formulation of government decisions and policies by helping to provide knowledge on and address challenges in industries such as agriculture, water, energy, health, safety and security.

Over the medium term, the agency planned to continue focusing on activities that ensure that these services are integrated into service delivery. Key among these is the space infrastructure hub project, where the agency plans to develop spacecraft and ground segment infrastructure to support deep space operations, earth observation and space science operations.

Through the SANSA, South Africa has been appointed to host one of the designated International Civil Aviation Organization regional centres for the provision of space weather information to the entire aviation sector flying in African airspace.

South Africa has signed an agreement with the USA National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA) to build a deep-space vehicle tracking and communications ground station in the semi-desert Karoo region of Matjiesfontein, in the Western Cape. This new ground station will be helping to track history-making NASA missions to the moon and beyond by 2025. The partnership will also see continued skills development in space science and technology, which the DSI has been investing in for years.

Technology Innovation Agency (TIA)

The TIA draws its mandate from the TIA Act of 2008, as amended. The agency serves as the key institutional intervention to bridge the innovation gap between R&D outcomes from higher education institutions, science councils, public entities and private companies to maximise the potential of technological innovation for stimulating the economy.

Over the medium term, the TIA planned to continue focusing on bridging the innovation gap between R&D; supporting technologies within the national system of innovation; scaling up all strategic programmes by increasing the pace at which applications and internal processes occur; creating a conducive environment for engaging with innovators, stakeholders and suppliers; adopting measures to support small, medium and micro enterprises in the sector; and increasing the participation of marginalised segments of society.

Over the next three years, the TIA aimed to license 70 technological innovations, launch 101 products into the market and ensure that 24 technology innovations were operational and functional.

Research and science bodies

South African Bureau of Standards (SABS)

The SABS was established as a statutory body in terms of the Standards Act of 2008 and is part of South Africa's standardisation, quality assurance, accreditation and metrology technical infrastructure institutions.

The bureau is mandated to develop, promote and maintain South African national standards; render conformity assessment services; and promote the quality of commodities, products and services in an effort to protect the integrity of the South African market, protect consumers, create a competitive advantage, and facilitate access for South Africans to local and international markets.

Over the medium term, the SABS planned to continue revitalising testing operations and facilities in targeted sectors such as cement, radiation protection services and the automotive industry.

The bureau also intended to improve its standard development processes to enable industrialisation and faster turnaround times. It expected to do this by enhancing digital collaborative tools to effectively engage with stakeholders that participate in its technical committees.

National Intellectual Property Management Office (NIPMO)

The NIPMO is mandated to ensure that intellectual property from publicly financed R&D is identified, protected, used and commercialised for the benefit of the people of South Africa, whether it be for social, economic, military or any other benefit.

Agricultural Research Council (ARC)

The ARC is the main agricultural research institution in South Africa. It was established by the Agricultural Research Act of 1990 and is mandated to conduct R&D and effect the transfer of technology to promote agriculture and industry; contribute to better quality of life; and facilitate and ensure the conservation of natural resources.

Over the medium term, the ARC planned to focus on generating knowledge and technologies that will enhance the efficiencies of crop production, animal production and health; managing natural resources; developing a foot-and-

mouth vaccine production facility at Onderstepoort to reduce reliance on imports; maintaining national assets; and providing diagnostic and analytical services on behalf of the department.

Mintek

Mintek's mandate, as set out in the Mineral Technology Act of 1989, is to maximise the value derived from South Africa's mineral resources through, among other things, R&D, technology transfer, and the creation of an enabling environment for the establishment and expansion of mineral industries.

To this end, Mintek develops appropriate, innovative technology for transfer to the industry, and provides test work, consultancy, analytical and mineralogical services to clients around the world.

Council for Geoscience (CGS)

The CGS was established in terms of the Geoscience Act of 1993 to promote the search for and exploitation of minerals in South Africa. Its mandate is to generate, compile, curate and publish world-class geoscience knowledge products, provide geoscience-related services to the South African public and industry, and render advisory services related to geohazards and geo-environmental pollution.

The data generated by the CGS enables key activities such as the assessment of environmental impacts from mining, geohazards and shale gas development.

South African Medical Research Council (SAMRC)

The council's mandate in terms of the SAMRC Act of 1991 is to promote the improvement of the health and quality of life of the population through research, development and technology transfer.

In line with this mandate, the SAMRC conducts and funds relevant and responsive health research, capacity development, innovation and research translation. Over the medium-term period, the council aimed to accept or publish about 1 900 journal articles, books and book chapters by authors affiliated with and/or funded by it.

National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS)

The NHLS was established in terms of the NHLS Act of 2000, and provides pathology services for the majority of the South African population through its 233 laboratories across the country. This includes forensic chemistry laboratory services, which the service took over from the Department of Health in 2022/23. The service also houses the National Institute for Communicable Diseases and the National Institute for Occupational Health.

South African National Energy Development Institute (SANEDI)

The SANEDI was established in terms of the National Energy Act of 2008. It is mandated to direct, monitor and conduct applied energy R&D, and demonstrate

and deploy specific measures to promote the uptake of green energy and energy efficiency in South Africa.

Water Research Commission (WRC)

The legislative mandate of the WRC is set out in the Water Research Act of 1971. Its primary functions include promoting coordination, cooperation and communication in water R&D; establishing water research needs and priorities; enhancing knowledge and capacity building within the water sector; and stimulating and funding priority-based water research.

Over the next three years, the commission planned to support government programmes in the water and sanitation sector. This included the implementation of the National Water Resource Strategy.

To ensure that water is supplied efficiently and predictably while ensuring transparency, the commission aimed to conduct 240 sector-related research projects over the period ahead.

South African Environmental Observation Network (SAEON)

The SAEON is a long-term environmental observation and research facility of the NRF. The SAEON's three focus areas are environmental observation, data management and education outreach.

The DSI provides core funding for these activities. The SAEON has a distributed network of seven nodes, two research infrastructures and a national office. The research network covers the major terrestrial and marine ecosystems in South Africa and supports well over 100 researchers and students a year.

South African Astronomical Observatory (SAAO)

The SAAO is South Africa's leading astronomy research institute and home to the Southern African Large Telescope, the largest optical telescope in the southern hemisphere.

Founded in 1820, the SAAO is the national centre for optical and infrared astronomy in South Africa. Its primary role is to conduct fundamental research in astronomy and astrophysics by providing a world-class facility to scientists.

The SAAO also promotes astronomy and astrophysics in southern Africa, by sharing research findings and discoveries, and participating in outreach activities to enthuse citizens about physics and astronomy.



**SOCIAL
DEVELOPMENT**

**OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
SOUTH AFRICA
2022/23**



Social Development

The Department of Social Development (DSD) provides social protection services and leads government's efforts to forge partnerships through which vulnerable individuals, groups and communities become capable and active participants in the development of themselves and society.

The social development function facilitates access to social grants and welfare services to reduce poverty and inequality, protect children, and empower women, youth and people with disabilities.

Several pieces of legislation determine the department's mandate, a number of which are under review, are the:

- **Non-profit Organisations Act of 1997** establishes an administrative and regulatory framework within which non-profit organisations (NPOs) can conduct their affairs, and provides for their registration by the department;
- **1997 White Paper for Social Welfare** sets out the principles, guidelines, policies and programmes for developmental social welfare in South Africa;
- **1998 White Paper on Population Policy for South Africa** is aimed at promoting the sustainable development of all South Africans by integrating population issues with development planning in all spheres of government and all sectors of society;
- **Social Assistance Act of 2004** provides a legislative framework for the provision of social assistance. The Act and its regulations set out different types of grants payable, including those for social relief, and their qualifying criteria;
- **Children's Act of 2005**, as amended, gives effect to certain rights of children as contained in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, and sets out principles and processes relating to their care and protection;
- **Older Persons Act of 2006** is aimed at maintaining and promoting the rights, status, well-being, safety and security of older people. It provides for older people to enjoy quality services while staying with their families and in their communities for as long as possible, and to live in residential care facilities;
- **Prevention of and Treatment for Substance Abuse Act of 2008** and associated regulations provide a legal framework for the establishment, registration and monitoring of in-patient treatment centres and halfway houses. Over the medium-term period, the department planned to focus on: providing income support to the poor and vulnerable; providing developmental social welfare services and increased access to services; supporting and monitoring the implementation of policies, legislation, norms and standards for the provision of social welfare services to children; addressing gender-based violence and femicide (GBVF), HIV and AIDS and other social ills; and building sustainable communities.

Over the medium-term period, the department aimed to focus on providing income support to the poor and vulnerable through social grants administered by the South African Social Security Agency (SASSA); facilitating the development of a comprehensive social security reform strategy; preventing fraud in the social

security system; providing and increasing access to developmental social welfare services, particularly for vulnerable groups; and building sustainable communities to alleviate poverty.

Providing income support to the poor and vulnerable

Through the provision of social grants to qualifying beneficiaries, the DSD's Social Assistance programme plays a critical role in government's strategy to tackle poverty and inequality.

Reforming social security and preventing fraud

The DSD planned to continue developing policy proposals on social security reform. This includes working with other departments to develop a *White Paper on Social Security* that was expected to culminate in a Social Security Bill that the department aimed to submit to Cabinet in 2024/25.

The proclamation of the Social Assistance Amendment Act of 2020 has paved the way for the department to finalise the operationalisation of the Inspectorate for Social Assistance, which is mandated to ensure that there is independent capacity to address and prevent fraud in the social grant system.

Providing and increasing access to developmental social welfare services

The Children's Amendment Act of 2022 is intended to strengthen the protection of vulnerable children through the coordinated provision of care and protection services, address gaps and challenges in the child care and protection system, and identify strategies to address these challenges.

Over the medium-term period, the department planned to focus on increasing awareness and providing training to workers in the social development sector on the Act and the practice guidelines for national and international adoption of children.

The department will also monitor the implementation of the guidelines for community-based prevention and early intervention services to vulnerable children. Over the period ahead, the department aimed to provide stakeholders in GBVF hotspot districts with training on the psychosocial services policy.

This is expected to lead to better structured, regulated and timely responses that also reduce the likelihood of victims becoming perpetrators themselves, as well as of repeat victimisation.

These services are also provided through a toll-free line. As part of its efforts to improve the response, care and healing of victims of gender-based violence, the DSD was expected to finalise the intersectoral policy on sheltering over the medium-term period.

The policy was expected to make provisions for short-term alternative accommodation where victims of abuse could positively transform their lives through empowerment programmes. The department aimed to continue monitoring the implementation of the universal treatment curriculum in 12 public substance abuse treatment centres, review the National Drug Master Plan, and

finalise the Prevention of and Treatment for Substance Use Disorders Bill and accompanying regulations.

Building sustainable communities to alleviate poverty

Over the medium term, the department aimed to strengthen community engagements in 34 districts by implementing the community mobilisation and empowerment framework, which promotes the use of household and community profiling to inform service and support provision.

It also aimed to link 2% of grant recipients with sustainable livelihood opportunities, including through the expanded public works programme. In its efforts to strengthen the regulatory environment, the department will aim to monitor the implementation of the Non-profit Organisations Act of 1997 and ensure improved turnaround times for processing non-profit organisation applications and reports.

National Drug Master Plan (NDMP) 2019-2024

The NDMP (2019-2024) is a blueprint for combating the scourge of alcohol and substance abuse which has reached epidemic proportions in South Africa.

The overarching goal of the NDMP is to prevent drug use before it starts, early intervention to ensure substance users receive treatment and rehabilitation services and reducing the demand for illicit drugs.

Government is committed to tackle the scourge of alcohol and substance abuse in South Africa. In this regard, the DSD has established the Central Drug Authority, a multisectoral forum to tackle the scourge of alcohol and substance abuse.

Entities

South African Social Security Agency

The SASSA Act of 2004 provides for the establishment of the SASSA. The agency's objectives are to ensure effective and efficient administration, management and payment of social assistance to qualifying beneficiaries.

The majority of applications for social grants over this period were expected to be finalised within one day, with the exception of the Disability Grant, which requires appointments with health care practitioners.

Over the medium-term period, the agency planned to prioritise interventions such as improving financial management to address the findings from internal and external audits; implementing measures to reduce the cost of administering social assistance, including encouraging beneficiaries to move to more cost-effective grant access channels such as retail merchants; building management capacity for a streamlined organisational environment that will help in the fight against fraud and corruption; and migrating to a web-based system.

A more suitable operating model and organisational structure were expected to lead to optimised processes, policies and procedures, and build the capacity of staff to operate in a technology-friendly environment.

This will be complemented by the implementation of an electronic content management solution by 2024/25, which is expected to create an electronic repository for the agency's records and automate the management of grant beneficiaries from inception.

National Development Agency (NDA)

The NDA was established in terms of the NDA Act of 1998. Its primary mandate is to contribute towards the eradication of poverty and its causes by granting funds to civil society organisations to implement development projects in poor communities.

Over the next three years, the agency planned to support on average 3 000 civil-society organisations per year by strengthening institutional areas such as governance, compliance, financial management, reporting and conflict resolution; and providing grant funding to stimulate economic activity and create job opportunities in poor communities where these organisations operate.

In line with its aim of reducing poverty and developing communities, the agency plans to partner with research and academic institutions to produce nine research publications and host 15 development policy dialogues over the medium-term period to engage with relevant stakeholders. These are intended to inform the development of policy on job creation, economic development, and training and development.

Programmes and relevant bodies:

National Youth Policy (NYP)

The NYP 2020-2030, also referred to as the NYP 2030, is a cross-sectoral policy aimed at affecting positive youth development outcomes for young people at local, provincial and national levels in South Africa.

Developed by the Department of Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities, in collaboration with multiple stakeholders and young people, the policy was developed to redress the wrongs and injustices of the past and to deal decisively with the persistent as well as new and emerging challenges they are facing. The NYP 2030 defines young people as those aged between 14 and 35.

Blind SA

Blind SA is an organisation for the blind and is governed by the blind. Situated in Johannesburg, it is aligned with other member organisations throughout South Africa.

The organisation provides, among other things, study bursaries for visually impaired students for further education, Braille publications in all of South Africa's official languages, Braille training that entails writing and reading, and orientation and mobility training. It equips blind people with the skills they need to fully and independently participate in society. This includes support in living without assistance, getting about, using technology, reading, working and socialising.

All this is made possible through advocacy, the Education Committee, Braille Services, orientation and mobility services and the employment programme. It is through this, and the support of donors, that Blind SA connects blind or visually impaired South Africans with the world they live in.

South African Braille Authority (SABA)

SABA is the standard setting body for and promotes and advocates for Braille and Braille-related matters in South Africa. The non-profit organisation advocates, promotes, monitors and evaluates for the ubiquitous use of Braille through literacy and the various facets and applications.

South African National Council for the Blind (SANCB)

The SANCB is a registered non-profit and public benefit organisation established in 1929 with the core objectives of advocacy and promoting the rights of persons with visual impairments, prevention, inclusion and support.

As a South African national representative body for the blind, it offers a supportive, rights driven function to its nearly 80-member organisations. The presence of its community work is felt throughout its nine provincial structures in South Africa. The SANCB also lays emphasis on the prevention of blindness and in 1944 the Bureau for the Prevention of Blindness was established.

Support for the hearing impaired

The South African National Deaf Association (SANDA) is dedicated to providing quality services, ensuring public accessibility and increasing awareness of issues affecting Deaf people at all levels in South Africa. The mandate of SANDA is to:

- build capacity in the Deaf sector;
- influence public policies;
- set the agenda for meaningful inclusive development; and
- provide comprehensive human development services that benefit Deaf people at all levels of society.

Older people

South Africa's Older Persons Act of 2006, which came into operation in 2010, recognises the importance of older persons in the country's democracy and development.

Guided by the Older Persons Act of 2006 and the Madrid Plan of Action on Ageing, the DSD in partnership with the departments of Health; Sport, Arts and Culture and the South African Older Persons Forum introduced the Active Ageing Programme to transform the ageing experience and empower senior citizens to stay active and engaged so that they can continue to enjoy healthy and purposeful lives.

Golden Games, which form part of the Active Ageing Programme, encourage senior citizens to be active and promote longer life for the aged. They participate in different sporting activities like soccer, athletics and a fun walk.



SPORT, ARTS
AND CULTURE

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO **SOUTH AFRICA**

2022/23

Sport, Arts and Culture

The Department of Sport, Arts and Culture (DSAC) is mandated to provide leadership to the sport, arts and culture sector to accelerate its transformation; oversee the development and management of sport, arts and culture in South Africa; legislate on sports participation, sports infrastructure and safety; improve South Africa's international ranking in selected sports through a partnership with the South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee (SASCOC); preserve, develop, protect and promote the cultural, heritage, linguistic diversity and legacy of South Africa; lead nation-building and social cohesion through social transformation; enhance archives and records management structures and systems; and promote access to information.

In its efforts to enable transformed, capable and professional sport, arts and culture sectors, over the medium term, the department planned to focus on promoting and protecting heritage; creating job opportunities in the cultural and creative sector; and providing integrated and accessible sport infrastructure and events.

Over the medium term, the department aimed to continue developing, transforming, preserving, protecting and promoting sport, arts, and culture at all levels of participation to foster an active, winning, creative and socially cohesive nation.

In support of this, over the period ahead, the department aimed to focus on creating job opportunities to contribute to economic growth, promoting social cohesion and facilitating nation building, developing and promoting sport and recreation, transforming and building capacity in the arts and culture sector, and building and maintaining heritage assets.

Creating job opportunities in the cultural and creative industries

In addition to their role in instilling social and cultural values and fostering a national identity among South Africans, the cultural and creative industries have the potential to contribute to economic growth, employment and international trade.

The Mzansi Golden Economy (MGE) Programme seeks to unlock this potential by facilitating the creation of job opportunities in the arts, culture and heritage sector by supporting interventions designed to develop audiences, stimulate demand, increase market access and develop skills.

The MGE funds community arts development programmes, incubators, other skills development initiatives, national and provincial flagships, and 270 projects in the creative sector. It has the potential to create 36 000 job opportunities in the cultural and creative industry.

Over 1 020 artists were expected to be placed in schools over the next three years with the aim of developing and improving art practitioners' pedagogical capabilities and skills to collaborate with educators in schools and other learning centres, and communicate and interact more effectively with learners.

Promoting social cohesion and facilitating nation building

The DSAC implements the national social cohesion strategy and brings into the mainstream targeted groups in arts, culture and heritage, including arts and culture in schools. It is also responsible for the coordination of its commitment to Priority 6 (social cohesion and safer communities) of government's 2019-2024 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF).

The department plays a crucial role in executing this commitment through various projects, which over the medium term include promoting South African national symbols, especially the national flag, through public awareness activations around the #IAmTheFlag campaign and the national anthem. These projects will be complemented by community dialogue platforms to encourage active citizen participation.

The department also planned to implement 20 annual advocacy platforms on social cohesion over the medium-term period.

Developing and promoting sport and recreation

Sport has the potential to bring together diverse groups and create a socially cohesive society with a common national identity. In recognition of this, the department will be channelling funds to promote mass participation and sport development for programmes such as Move for Health, the national indigenous games festival, the Big Walk, National Recreation Day, national youth camps and various outreach programmes.

The department aimed to encourage the development of young people through sport and enable them to showcase their skills at events such as the national school sport championship.

Transforming and building capacity in the arts and culture sector

In support of Priority 3 (education, skills and health) of government's 2019-2024 MTSF, the department is committed to upskilling and transforming the arts and culture sector.

This mainly involves building capacity through bursaries, placements and incubator programmes, including the design focus programme, the national craft incubator, the emerging creatives programme, the Eersterust visual arts incubator, the women writers' programme, the creative and technology hub, and incubator programmes at each of the department's performing arts institutions.

Funds have been allocated to provide financial support to 66 capacity-building projects in the cultural and creative sector, and to award language bursaries to 750 qualifying students.

Maintaining heritage assets

The maintenance of heritage assets such as libraries and heritage sites is vital for the ongoing imperative of promoting, sustaining and enriching a national identity.

To expand access to knowledge and information, the department planned to build 105 libraries and upgrade 150 community libraries over the medium-term

period. Monuments, memorials and museums serve as important heritage assets that preserve legacies and pay homage to people and events that have shaped South African society and form part of the nation building and social cohesion agenda.

Funds have been allocated over the medium term for projects such as finalising the Sarah Baartman Centre of Remembrance and the OR Tambo Garden of Remembrance, and maintaining the Samora Machel Memorial Museum and Iziko Museums.

Role players

Boxing South Africa (BSA)

BSA was established in terms of the Boxing Act of 2001, which mandates the entity to: administer professional boxing; recognise amateur boxing; create and ensure synergy between professional and amateur boxing; and promote engagement and interaction between associations of boxers, managers, promoters and trainers.

Over the medium term, the entity planned to continue focusing on contributing to nation building, healthy lifestyles and social cohesion by promoting participation in boxing, especially among young people and women; strengthening the boxing regulatory environment; and ensuring the effective administration of the sport.

Netball South Africa (NSA)

The NSA is the peak governing body for the sport of netball in South Africa, which is responsible for overseeing the practice of the sport across the country. Additionally, the NSA is the managing body for the National Netball Team – the Spar Proteas. Since 1992, South Africa has participated in international tournaments primarily within the Commonwealth nations.

With a strong grassroots network in schools and universities, netball in South Africa has taken on a more professional position with the introduction of the Telkom Netball League, and with many of the players plying their trade in England, Australia and New Zealand leagues. The NSA hosted the Netball World Cup in Cape Town from 28 July to 6 August 2023, which was the first to be held in Africa. Sixteen nations contested for the title, which was won by undisputed champions of world netball, Australia, after beating England 61-45 to claim their 12th crown.

Tennis South Africa (TSA)

The TSA is the national governing body for the sport of tennis in South Africa created to standardise rules and regulations and to promote and develop the growth of tennis in South Africa. The not-for-profit organisation invests its proceeds to promote and develop the growth of tennis, from the grass-roots to the professional levels, and to raise funds for and on behalf of tennis players and the game of tennis within South Africa. The TSA is affiliated to both the International Tennis Federation and Confederation of African Tennis.

GolfRSA

GolfRSA is the unified body of the South African Golf Association and Women's Golf South Africa, administering, operating and providing service to amateur golf in South Africa.

GolfRSA's role is to look after the interests of more than 460 golf clubs and 139 000 men, women, boy and girl club members, produce champion golfers and provide the opportunity for everyone in South Africa to experience the game of golf.

South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport (SAIDS)

The SAIDS promotes participation in sport without the use of prohibited performance enhancing substances and methods, and educates sportspeople on fair play and the harmful effects of the use of prohibited performance enhancing substances and methods. The SAIDS's core focus is to tackle doping in sport in order to ensure a culture of ethics and fair play within South Africa.

South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee

SASCOC is the national multi-coded sporting body responsible for the preparation, presentation and performance of teams to all multi-coded events, namely the Olympic Games, Paralympic Games, Commonwealth Games, World Games, All Africa Games, Olympic Youth Games, Commonwealth Youth Games and Zone VI Games.

It also looks after the various national federations affiliated to it, together with the various provincial sports councils. SASCOC is responsible for the awarding for National Protea Colours to athletes/officials who have met the criteria to represent South Africa in different sporting codes and arenas.

South Africa is also represented on the Association of National Olympic Committees of Africa and on the Confederation of Southern African National Olympic Committees.

World Anti-Doping Agency (WADA)

The WADA was established in 1999 as an international independent agency composed and funded equally by the sport movement and governments of the world. Its key activities include scientific research, education, development of antidoping capacities and monitoring of the World Anti-Doping Code – the document harmonising anti-doping policies in all sports and all countries.

The Anti-Doping Education and Learning Platform (ADEL) is the central hub for WADA's eLearning courses and education resources. ADEL supports the anti-doping community by providing training solutions for athletes, their support personnel and other stakeholders.

The Anti-Doping Administration and Management System is a digital tool that simplifies the daily activities of all stakeholders and athletes involved in the anti-doping system.

Athletics South Africa (ASA)

ASA, which reports to the SASCOC, is the national governing body for the sport of athletics in South Africa that is recognised by World Athletics and is also a member of Confederation of African Athletics.

Mind Sports South Africa (MSSA)

The MSSA is a non-profit association recognised as the national controlling body for mind sports in South Africa. It is affiliated to the International eSports Federation, Federation de Jeu du Mondiale, and the International Wargames Federation. Due to its membership of such international bodies, the MSSA is the sole authority for the games that it caters for in terms of the Sport and Recreation Act of 1998 (as amended).

The MSSA is responsible for the good governance and promotion of historical figure games (also known as wargames), board games (such as Diplomacy, Checkers, Draughts, Morabaraba, Sport Stacking, etc), card gaming, robotics, and eSports (whether they are played on 'cell phones, Sony® PSP's, personal computers or similar).

Major events

Big Walk

The Big Walk is staged on the first Sunday of October to encourage participation in physical activity. The annual Big Walk takes place in October. It is aligned with The Association for International Sport for All World Walking Day, which encourages and lobbies countries to walk by creating advocacy and awareness during October.

Annual National Recreation Day

Although not a public holiday, the day provides an opportunity to all South Africans to be actively involved by participating in recreation activities that will improve their health and wellbeing.

National Indigenous Games

The National Indigenous Games festival forms part of South Africa's annual heritage celebrations and brings people from culturally diverse backgrounds together. The popularity of the festival in recent years has contributed to an increase in the number of active participants in sport and recreation events.

The games played included *khokho*, *intonga*, *ncuva*, *morabaraba*, *diketo*, *drie stokkies*, *kgati*, *dibeke* and *juskei*, all of which are indigenous to South Africa.

Major sporting activities

Sporting codes

Major sporting codes in South Africa include: Athletics; Biking; Mountain Biking; Cycling; Boxing; Cricket; Canoeing; Rowing; Golf; Hockey; Ice Hockey; Motorsport; Flying; Netball; Rugby; Running (including South Africa's two world-

renowned ultra-marathons – the Comrades Marathon in KwaZulu-Natal and the Two Oceans Marathon in the Western Cape); Soccer; Surfing; Sailing; Swimming; Tennis and Chess.

Services rendered by the DSAC

Some of the services rendered by the department include the:

- **National Archives**, which makes archival material available to the public. Although actual access to archival documentation is free of charge, the public is charged for the reproduction of material for further use, either on film or paper. Publications are also sold, and the public is charged for the transfer of data by magnetic means.
- **Video and Sound Archives** which collects, preserves and provides access to audio-visual records created both by government and private bodies or individuals.
- **Bureau for Heraldry**, which registers the heraldic representations, names, special names and uniforms of individuals, associations and institutions. It also renders advice on heraldic and related matters and provides financial assistance to institutions, boards, committees or other public bodies or persons in order to promote the functional objectives of the Bureau of Heraldry.
- **National Language Service**, which provides a translating and editing service to all government departments. It also provides policy development support relating to official language development, particularly related to the Use of Official Languages Act of 2012.

Promoting and preserving heritage infrastructure

The department's infrastructure development initiatives aim to achieve redress for South Africa's historical imbalances and contribute to social transformation by establishing and maintaining world-class heritage sites to boost tourism and create job opportunities, particularly in historically disadvantaged areas.

Community library services

In addition to building and upgrading libraries, the department, in collaboration with the Department of Basic Education (DBE), the DSAC also plans to build 70 dual library service points to support school curricula and enhance learning outcomes.

Cultural and creative industries

The MGE seeks to create economic and job opportunities in the arts, culture and heritage sector by supporting programmes designed to develop audiences, stimulate demand, increase market access, and develop skills.

New names of towns

The names of towns that have been changed in the post-democratic dispensation include the following:

- **Limpopo:** Bela-Bela (Warmbaths); Lephalale (Ellisras); Modimolle (Nylstroom); Mokopane (Potgietersrus); Musina (Messina); Polokwane (Pietersburg); Senwabarana (Bochum); Mogwadi (Dendron); Morebeng (Soekmekaar); Modjadjiskloof (Duiwelskloof) and Mookgophong (Naboomspruit).
- **Mpumalanga:** eMalahleni (Witbank); eManzana (Badplaas); KwaDukuza (Stanger); Mashishing (Lydenburg); Makhazeni (Belfast); Emgwenya (Waterval Boven); eNtokozweni (Machadodorp); Mbombela; (Nelspruit); eMkhondo (Piet Retief) and Thuli Fakude (Leandra).
- **Free State:** Mamafubedu (Petrus Steyn), Hlohlolwane (Clocolan) and Intabazwe (Harrismith).
- **Eastern Cape:** Gqeberha (Port Elizabeth); James Calata (Jamestown); Maletswai (Aliwal North); Cacadu (Lady Frere); Komani (Queenstown); Khowa (Elliot); KwaBhaca (Mount Frere); MaXesibeni (Mount Ayliff); Dikeni (Alice) and Makhanda (Grahamstown).
- **KwaZulu-Natal:** eMthonjaneni (Melmoth) and KwaDukuza (Stanger).
- **Gauteng:** Sophiatown (Triomf).
- **Western Cape:** Bo-Kaap (Schotchkloof).

New names of airports

- King Phalo Airport (East London Airport).
- Mthatha Airport (KD Matanzima Airport).
- Chief Dawid Stuurman International Airport (Port Elizabeth International Airport).

Some of the remarkable awards through which South Africa celebrates excellence in arts and culture include:

- South African Music Awards (SAMAs).
- South African Traditional Music Achievement (SATMA).
- South African Film and Television Awards.
- South African Fashion Industry Awards
- South African Literally Awards
- Van Toeka Af Living Legends Recognition Series.

Cultural Development

National Art Bank of South Africa (NABSA)

The NABSA is a national programme of the then DAC, as part of the MGE Strategy implementation. The vision of the NABSA is to promote, foster and stimulate a vibrant market for the collection of South African contemporary visual art.

It is tasked with purchasing artworks from South African artists, particularly that of emerging artists in order to lease and sell the artworks to South African Government departments, private companies and private individuals.

Young Patriots Programme

The Young Patriots Programme was launched in 2016 to encourage young actively in building the capacity of the arts, culture and heritage sector, and gain meaningful skills through service delivery improvement and moral regeneration initiatives, and the youth social cohesion advocates programme.

National heritage

As part of efforts in recognising the work of South Africa's Living Human Treasures, the department has produced two books on women artists who have made a unique contribution to the living heritage. The first two books are about Noria Mabasa, a world-renowned (ceramic and wood) sculptor from Tshino Village in the Vuwani area in Limpopo and Esther Mahlangu, world-famous for her largescale paintings referencing her Ndebele heritage.

Languages

South Africa is a multilingual country. The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 guarantees equal status to 11 official languages to cater for its diverse people and their cultures. These are English, isiNdebele, isiXhosa, isiZulu, Afrikaans, Sepedi, Sesotho, Setswana, Siswati, Tshivenda and Xitsonga.

Other languages used in South Africa include the Khoi, Nama and San languages, Sign Language, Arabic, German, Greek, Gujarati, Hebrew, Hindi, French, Portuguese, Sanskrit, Tamil, Shona, Telegu and Urdu. South Africa has various structures and institutions that support the preservation and development of languages.

On 19 July 2023, President Cyril Ramaphosa signed into law the South African Sign Language (SASL) Bill during a ceremony at the Union Buildings in Pretoria. On 2 May 2023, the National Assembly approved that Section 6 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 be amended to include the SASL as the 12th official language to promote the rights of persons who are deaf and hard of hearing.

The SASL is an indigenous language that constitutes an important element of South African linguistic and cultural heritage. It has its own distinct grammatical structures and lexicon and it is independent of any other language. The new legislation seeks to:

- advance the cultural acceptance of SASL;
- ensure the realisation of the rights of persons who are deaf and hard of hearing to equal protection and benefit of the law and human dignity; and
- promote inclusive and substantive equality and prevent or eliminate unfair discrimination on the grounds of disability, as guaranteed by Section 9 of the Constitution.

South Africa became the fourth country on the African continent to recognise sign language as an official language. Other African countries are Kenya, Zimbabwe and Uganda.

Arts and culture organisations

Some of the organisations which are playing an active role in upholding the mandate of the DSAC include the following:

- The **National Heritage Council** engages heritage stakeholders in public and private institutions, including the various organs of civil society, mobilises debates and builds awareness about heritage.
- The **South African Heritage Resources Agency** is the national administrative management body for the protection of South Africa's cultural heritage.
- The **National Arts Council of South Africa (NAC)** facilitates opportunities for people to practice and appreciate the arts.
- The **National Film and Video Foundation** develops and promotes the film and video industry in South Africa.
- The **Pan South African Language Board** is a constitutional institution that promotes an awareness of multilingualism as a national resource and supports previously marginalised languages.
- The **South African Geographical Names Council** is an advisory body that facilitates name changes by consulting with communities to advise the Minister of Arts and Culture.
- Arts institutions include the State Theatre in Pretoria, Playhouse Company in Durban, Artscape in Cape Town, Market Theatre in Johannesburg, Performing Arts Centre of the Free State in Bloemfontein and the Windybrow Theatre in Johannesburg.
- Heritage institutions include Die Afrikaanse Taalmuseum en monument, Paarl; Ditsong Museums of South Africa, Pretoria; Iziko Museums, Cape Town; KwaZulu-Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg; National Museum, Bloemfontein; National English Literary Museum, Grahamstown; Robben Island Museum, Cape Town; Voortrekker Museum, Pietermaritzburg; War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein; William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley; Luthuli Museum, Stanger; Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha; Freedom Park and the Engelenburg House Art Collection.

Festivals

Some of the different arts and cultural festivals in South Africa include the following:

- The Aardklop National Arts Festival is held annually in October in Potchefstroom, North West. Although it is inherently Afrikaans, it is universal in character.
- Arts Alive International Festival in Newtown in Johannesburg provides the best in homegrown and overseas entertainment in September.
- The Cape Town International Jazz Festival features international and African artists. It also features photographic and art exhibitions.
- The Grahamstown National Arts Festival at the end of July is the biggest annual celebration of the arts on the African continent and consists of drama, dance, theatre, comedy, opera, music, jazz, visual art exhibitions,

film, lectures, a craft fair and workshops, as well as a children's arts festival.

- The Kirkwood Wildlife Festival attracts visitors to see the game animal auction, agricultural exhibitions.
- The Dance Umbrella is a festival of contemporary choreography and dance, presenting work ranging from community-based dance troupes to international companies. The Dance Umbrella has established itself as the main "stepping stone" for many South African choreographers who now work internationally.
- The Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees, a vibrant festival for the performing arts, is held annually in Oudtshoorn and presentations include drama, cabaret, and contemporary and classical music.
- The Moretele Park Tribute Concert is an annual festival which is held at Moretele Park in Mamelodi, Pretoria.
- The Cape Town Minstrel Festival sees the minstrels taking over the streets of Cape Town (Mother City) annually on 2 January for a parade that dates back to the mid-19th century. Minstrels in troupes parade throughout the city centre in their colourful garb.
- The Mangaung African Cultural Festival in Bloemfontein is one of the biggest cultural tourism events in southern Africa. This 10-day festival in October showcases the cream of African and international talent.
- The National Arts Festival, held annually in July in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape, is one of the largest and most diverse arts gatherings in Africa.
- The Splashy Fen Music Festival near Underberg in KwaZulu-Natal offers a variety of mainstream and alternative rock and pop music.
- Standard Bank Joy of Jazz is Johannesburg's biggest annual jazz festival, with local and international artists performing at different venues across the city.
- Up the Creek is a popular music festival held in February on the banks of the Breede River near Swellendam in the Western Cape.
- The White Mountain Folk Festival in the Central Drakensberg mountain range offers great music in an awesome setting for three days in September. It features acoustic performances by some of South Africa's top folk musicians.
- 503 Music Festival takes place twice a year in KwaMashu, KwaZulu-Natal. It is all about celebrating and thanking icons who were born and raised in the area, also bringing other national icons to the township.

Other festivals that attract both national and international visitors are: Innibos in Nelspruit, Mpumalanga; Taung Cultural Calabash in North West; the Awesome Africa Music Festival in Durban, KwaZulu-Natal; the Windybrow Theatre Festival in Johannesburg; Hilton Arts Festival in KwaZulu-Natal, and the One City Many Cultures in Cape Town, Western Cape.

Cultural tourism

Cultural festivals, African-cuisine projects, cultural villages, heritage routes and storytelling are areas that benefit from South Africa's booming tourism industry. Many cultural villages have been established throughout South Africa to reflect the different cultures and traditions of the country's people.

Initiated by the DSAC through the MGE Strategy of 2011, the South African Cultural Observatory (SACO) is a statistical and socio-economic research project, launched in 2014, which charts the socio-economic impact of the arts, culture and heritage sectors and the cultural and creative industries in South Africa.

The SACO supports the collection and analysis of data, influences policy, shares insights and builds on the intellectual capacity gained across the arts, culture and heritage sectors. It works across the breadth of all cultural domains, including the arts, heritage, tourism, museums, libraries, archives and creative industries.

Theatre

There are over 100 active venues across the country offering everything from indigenous drama, music, dance, cabaret and satire to classical opera and ballet.

Performing arts

Performing arts institutions are schedule 3A public entities established in terms of the Cultural Institutions Act of 1998. They are mandated to advance, promote and preserve the performing arts in South Africa; enhance the contribution of arts and culture to the economy; and create job opportunities and initiatives that further nation-building.

The following arts institutions receive annual transfers from the DSAC: Artscape (Cape Town); The Playhouse Company (Durban); The Market Theatre (Johannesburg); Performing Arts Centre of the Free State (Bloemfontein); and the South African State Theatre, (Pretoria).

Music

Music is one of the key cultural industries identified in the Cultural Industrial Growth Strategy Report and government has committed itself to harnessing its potential. In addition to its cultural value, music plays an important economic role in the country, generating significant copyright revenue. In this industry, the department has solid foundations on which to build.

These include the annual South African Music Week, the in-school education programme run in conjunction with the DBE, and the Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition. The Taking South African Music to the World Programme is aimed at improving export opportunities for South African music.

Government funds a number of musical ensembles directly and indirectly, through the NAC. South Africa is the 25th largest market for recorded music, with the industry employing more than 20 000 people. Local music accounts for a third of all the music bought by South Africans.

Township jazz and blues, especially the kwêla music of the 40s and 50s, are being redefined; the country also has a rich choral tradition, and pop and rock musicians have made their mark internationally.

Even techno-rave and house music have found their own variations in local culture. Kwaito and hip-hop are very popular, combining elements of rap, reggae and other musical styles into a distinctly South African style. Kwaai Jazz is also gaining momentum.

South African Music Awards

The Recording Industry of South Africa announced the full list of winners of the SAMAs at the SunBet Arena in Pretoria on 18 November. The winners were:

- **Female Artist of the Year:** Ntokozo Mbambo – Lavish Worship.
- **Male Artist of the Year:** AKA – Mass Country.
- **Duo/Group of the Year:** DJ Maphorisa and Kabza De Small – Scorpion Kings Live Sun Arena.
- **Album of the Year:** Lavish Worship – Ntokozo Mbambo.
- **Newcomer of the Year:** Myztro – 2.0 Nkwari.
- **Best Amapiano Album:** KOA II Part 1 – Kabza De Small.
- **Best Collaboration:** AKA featuring Nasty C – Lemons (Lemonade).
- **Best Hip-Hop Album:** This Is Religion – MashBeatz.
- **Best Traditional Album:** African Queen 2.0 – Makhadzi.
- **Beste Pop:** Jona – Bernice van der Westhuizen.
- **Best Adult Contemporary Album:** Dark Secrets – Louise Carver.
- **Beste Kontemporere Musiek Album:** Toe Roep Ek Jou Naam – Jan Blohm & Ryno Velvet.
- **Best African Adult Contemporary Album:** Usiba Lwe Gazi – Nathi.
- **Best Alternative Album:** On the Romance of Being – Desire Marea.
- **Best African Indigenous Faith Album:** Emmanuel – JTG Gospel Choir.
- **Best Classical/Instrumental Album:** Fire Beast – Vox Chamber Choir and Franco Prinsloo.
- **Best Reggae Album:** Unleashed – Blakka Yut.
- **Best R&B Album:** But Could the Moments in Between – Ndumiso Manana.
- **Best Dance Album:** Asante – Morda.
- **Best Rock Album:** Kanniedood – Francois Badenhorst (Francois Van Coke).
- **Best Afropop Album:** Isibuko – Sjava.
- **Best Traditional Faith Album:** The Overflow – Dumi Mkokstad.
- **Best Contemporary Faith Album:** Lavish Worship – Ntokozo Mbambo.
- **Best Jazz Album:** In the Spirit of Ntu – Nduduzo Makhathini.
- **Best Produced Music Video:** Shine – Elaine (producer: Shayna Gianelli; director: Jesse Ray Diamond).
- **Best Produced Album:** KOA II Part 1 – Kabza De Small (producer: Leslie George Theko, Artwork Sound, Da Muziqal Chef, Mdu aka TRP, Stakev, DJ Maphorisa and Felo Le Tee).

- **Best Engineered Album:** Mass Country – AKA (engineered & produced by Robin Kohl and Itu).
- **Best Pop Album:** Seasons – Lloyiso.
- **Remix of the Year:** Ndinovalo – Morda.
- **Best Maskandi Album:** Umqhele Nethawula – Khuzani.
- **Best Kwaito Album:** Speak n Vrostaan – Kwesta and Kabza De Small.
- **Best Gqom Album:** Meeting with the King – DJ Lag.
- **Rest of Africa Award:** Sounds of Peace – Moreira Chonguiça.
- **SAMRO Highest Airplay Composer Award:** ‘Sete’ ft. Young Stunna & Blxckie.
- **CAPASSO Most Streamed Song Award:** ‘Sete’ ft. Young Stunna & Blxckie.
- **Lifetime Achievement Award:** Mandoza (posthumous); Ihashi Elimhlophe; Gloria Bosman (posthumous) and Pops Mohamed.
- **International Achievement:** Wouter Kellerman, Zakes Bantwini and Nomcebo Zikode.
- **Record of the Year:** ‘Stimela’ – 2Point1 ft. Ntate Stunna & Nthabi Sings.
- **Music Video of the Year:** ‘Stimela’ – 2Point1 ft. Ntate Stunna & Nthabi Sings.

South African Traditional Music Achievement Awards

The 18th SATMA Awards, which featured 27 categories, took place at the DCC Jesus Dome in Durban on 15 December 2023. The winners were:

- **Best Afro Soul Song:** Ukukhanya by Eves Manxeba.
- **Best African Jazz Artist/Group:** Sandile Masilela.
- **Best Reggae Artist/Group:** Phumi Maduna.
- **Best Praise Singer:** Lizo Ndobe.
- **Best Indigenous Poet:** Msa Lomshiyo.
- **Best Upcoming Artist/Group:** Mamakie Motlogelwa.
- **Best Mbhaqang Artist/Group:** Impumelelo.
- **Best Traditional Acapella Artist/Group:** Bergville Green Lovers.
- **Best Traditional Collaboration:** MC Records KZN ft. Mduduzi Ncube & Musiholiq.
- **Best Traditional Music Community Radio Presenter:** Silulami Dumza (Nkqubela FM).
- **Best Department of Art and Culture:** Free State.
- **Best Department of Cultural Affairs Chief Director:** Sibongile Nkosi.
- **Best Traditional Outfit:** Maggymargs Designs.
- **Best Traditional Social Media Influencer:** King Nuba.
- **Best SePedi Artist/Group:** Seremi Crew.
- **Best Xitsonga Artist/Group:** Mr Post.
- **Best Ndebele Artist/Group:** Isumi Lamadoda.
- **Best IsiXhosa Artist/Group:** Balungile Shezi.
- **Best SeTswana Artist/Group:** Nomtiti 9.
- **Best SiSwati Artist/Group:** Msa Lomshiyo.
- **Best TshiVenda Artist/Group:** Vhudie.

- **Best Indian Artist/Group:** Yoji Cee.
- **Best Sesotho Artist/Group:** Choko.
- **Best Boeremusiek Artist/Group:** Donovan de Buys.
- **Best Maskandi (T&D) Artist/Group:** Inkos'yamagcokama.
- **Most Voted Song of the Year:** Umbayimbayi by Inkabi Zezwe.
- **Best Traditional Music SABC Radio Presenter of Year:** Mawaza Kabini (Kwekwezi FM).

Orchestras

The NAC is responsible for funding the KwaZulu-Natal, Cape and Gauteng orchestras as well as the Cape Town Jazz Orchestra.

Dance

Dancing is part of the African way of life and has become a prime means of artistic expression, with dance companies expanding and exploring new territory. Contemporary work ranges from normal preconceptions of movement and performance art or performance theatre to the completely unconventional.

The DSAC's Breathing New Vision into Theatre and Dance in South Africa, a National Theatre and Dance Policy aims to nurture and celebrate theatre and dance, embracing and celebrating the diversity of theatre and dance forms in South Africa. The policy builds on a number of proposals that have been made by civil society and other organisations and institutions over the last decade.

Visual arts

South Africa has a rich variety of visual art, with influences ranging from prehistoric, ancient and indigenous art to western, Asian and contemporary art. Art galleries, ranging from small privately owned commercial galleries, to major regional galleries such as the South African National Gallery in Cape Town, the Durban Art Gallery in KwaZulu-Natal, the Johannesburg Art Gallery in Gauteng and King George VI Gallery in Gqeberha in the Eastern Cape, showcase collections of indigenous, historical and contemporary works.

Rock art

There are many traces of ancient cultures that existed in southern Africa in the distant past. Experts estimate that there are 250 000 rock-art sites south of the Zambezi.

The San people left a priceless and unique collection of Stone Age paintings and engravings in the region, which also represents the largest collection of its kind in the world.

Photography

With its scenic beauty, abundant wildlife, diversity of cultures and rich historical heritage, South Africa is a photographer's paradise. Many South African photographers have been acclaimed for their work, which features in coffee-

table books, documentaries, local and overseas exhibitions, magazines and newspapers.

Architecture

South Africa has a rich architectural heritage, reflecting contributions from all the cultural groups in the country. Through the centuries, a unique trend has developed in South Africa's architectural style, which has been referred to as an innovative marriage of traditions.

This is evident in the variety of architectural structures found all over the country, ranging from humble dwellings, historical homesteads and public buildings, to modern, commercial buildings reflecting state-of-the-art technology and designs that match the best in the world.

Crafts

South African beadwork, once the insignia of tribal royalty alone, has found a huge range of applications, from the creation of coverings for everything from bottles to matchboxes. With workplaces ranging from the pavements and markets of the big cities to dwellings in deep rural areas, South Africans produce a remarkable range of arts and crafts, including various forms of traditional artwork and innovative new products.

These range from jewellery, tableware, home decorations, embroidery and key rings to skilfully crafted wooden engravings and wirework sculptures. In addition to the standard materials such as beads, grass, leather, fabric and clay, many other mediums are also used, including telephone wire, plastic bags, empty cans, bottle tops and even food tin labels, to create brightly coloured paper mâché bowls. Shops, markets and collectors dealing in African crafts provide much-needed employment and income to communities.

Literature

South Africa has a rich and diverse literary history, and the local literature sector has become globally competitive and the country's writers continue to command respect throughout the world. South Africa commemorates the annual National Book Week (NBW) in September. It is an initiative of the South African Book Development Council, in collaboration with the DSAC.

South African Literary Awards (SALA)

The SALA honoured 34 South Africa's authors, 25 winners and nine runners-up, at the 18th SALA held on the 32nd International African Writers' Day, 7th November 2023, Snowflake Venue, Potchefstroom, JB Marks Local Municipality in North West.

Children's Literature Award

1. Claudette Browne Storrar – *Nelly and Sam Thwala*.
2. Molebatsi Bosilong – *Montsane le Motho*.

- Philip de Vos – *Tokkelossiebossie en ander dol gedoentes*.
- Sinathi Mpukwana – *Unakho*.

Youth Literature Award

- Onke Mazibuko – *The Second Verse*.
- Mihlali Blackie – *Ukuzazi Ukuzithemba Nokuzamkela*.
- Kobate John Sekele – *Makgoma a Dihlong*.
- Annelie Ferreira – *Dit het alles begin met 'n hond*.

First Time Published Author Award

- Shevlyn Mottai – *Across the Kala Pani*.
- Ntloro Charlotte Pebane – *Lerato La Lepheko*.
- Ayanda Chris Mntwapi – *Bohlulwe Kukusa*.

K. Sello Duiker Memorial Literary Award

- Dimakatso David Mokwena – *Here Comes the Gay King*.

Poetry Award

- Michèle Betty – *Dark Horse*.
- Anelisa Thengimfene – *Amajingiqhiw' entlalo*.
- Kaka Mokakale – *Tswina ya poko*.

Nadine Gordimer Short Story Award

- Terry-Ann Adams – *White Chalk*.

Creative Non-Fiction Literary Award

- Mandla J. Radebe – *The Lost Prince of the ANC: The Life and Times of Jabulani Nobleman 'Mzala' Nxumalo*.
- Siphiwo Mahala – *Can Themba: The Making and Breaking of the Intellectual Tsotsi, a Biography*.

Novel Award

- Thivhusiwi Tshindane Tshivhula – *Hone Hu Tshi Tea U Maliwa Nga vhugai*.
- Kobate John Sekele – *Re Hwile La Pitsana*.
- Sue Nyathi – *An Angel's Demise*.

Posthumous Literary Award

- Seetsele Modiri Molema – *Solomon Tshekisho Plaatje – Morata Baabo*.

Chairperson's Literary Award

- Elinor Sisulu – *Body of Work*.

Lifetime Achievement Literary Award

- Pitika Ntuli – *Body of Work*.

2. Diana Ferrus – Body of Work.

Film

The South African Government recognises the significant role played by the film sector in nation-building, promoting social cohesion, reconciliation and supporting economic growth and job creation. Government offers a package of incentives to promote its film production industry.

The Foreign Film and Television Production incentive aims to attract foreign-based film productions to shoot on location in South Africa, and the South African Film and Television Production and Co-production Incentive aims to assist local film producers in producing local content.

The South African Emerging Black Filmmakers incentive, a subprogramme of the South African Film and Television Production and Co-production Incentive, which aims to assist local emerging black filmmakers to nurture and grow them to take up big productions and thus contribute towards employment creation.

The three largest film distributors in South Africa are Ster-Kinekor, United International Pictures and Nu-Metro. Ster-Kinekor has a specialised art circuit, called Cinema Nouveau, with theatres in Johannesburg, Cape Town, Durban and Pretoria.

Film festivals include the Durban International Film Festival; the North West Film Festival; the Apollo Film Festival in Victoria West; the Three Continents Film Festival (specialising in African, South American and Asian films); the Soweto Film Festival; and the Encounters Documentary Festival, which alternates between Cape Town and Johannesburg.

Museums

South Africa has more than 300 museums ranging from museums of geology, history, the biological sciences and the arts, to mining, agriculture, forestry and many other disciplines. The Nelson Mandela Museum in Soweto, Johannesburg had signed a partnership with Google to launch the Google Expedition that would provide a virtual tour of the museum.

The Apartheid Museum opened in 2001 and is acknowledged as the pre-eminent museum in the world dealing with 20th century South Africa, at the heart of which is the apartheid story. The Apartheid Museum, the first of its kind, illustrates the rise and fall of apartheid.

An architectural consortium, comprising several leading architectural firms, conceptualised the design of the building on a seven-hectare stand. The museum is a superb example of design, space and landscape offering the international community a unique South African experience.

National Library of South Africa (NLSA)

The NLSA was established in terms of the NLSA Act of 1998, and contributes to socioeconomic, cultural, educational, scientific and innovation development by collecting, recording, preserving and making available the national documentary

heritage, and promoting an awareness and appreciation for it, by fostering information literacy and facilitating access to information resources.

The NLSA provides services to community libraries in partnership with provincial library services. These services include ICT support, training in preservation and resource development, the promotion of legal deposit by book publishers in terms of the Legal Deposit Act of 1997, and marketing and exhibition services.

South African Library for the Blind (SALB)

The SALB was established in terms of the South African Library for the Blind Act of 1998, and is mandated to provide a national library and information service to blind and print-handicapped readers in South Africa. The SALB receives an operational subsidy from the DSAC. It is committed to providing a quality service to meet, as fully as practically possible, the information needs of all South Africans who are blind or print handicapped.

Blind SA

Blind SA, based in Johannesburg, provides services for blind and partially sighted individuals to uplift and empower them by publishing books, magazines and other documents in Braille. It equips blind people with the skills they need to fully and independently participate in society.

This includes support in living without assistance, getting about, using technology, reading, working and socialising. Braille Services of Blind SA is the only producer of Braille in all 11 official languages of South Africa.



TOURISM

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
SOUTH AFRICA

2022/23

Tourism

South Africa is blessed with an abundance of natural beauty and some of the most iconic landscapes in the world, an eclectic mix of cultures and tourism offerings and its greatest asset, the warmth of the people.

The mandate of the Department of Tourism (NDT), as outlined in the Tourism Act of 2014, is to promote the growth and development of the tourism sector; promote quality tourism products and services; provide for the effective marketing of South Africa as a domestic and international tourist destination; enhance cooperation and coordination between all spheres of government in developing and managing tourism; and promote responsible tourism for the benefit of South Africa, and for the enjoyment of all its residents and foreign visitors.

In recognition of tourism as a national priority with the potential to contribute significantly to economic development, the 1996 *White Paper on the Development and Promotion of Tourism in South Africa* provides for the promotion of domestic and international tourism. The National Tourism Sector Strategy provides a blueprint for the sector to meet the growth targets contained in the National Development Plan.

Attracting more tourists, growing the tourism economy and creating more jobs in the sector is vital to South Africa's economic recovery efforts.

The most recent data from Statistics South Africa and South African Tourism (SAT) show the sector is firmly on the road to recovery. In 2022, nearly 5,7 million tourists visited South Africa, and in the first quarter of 2023 the country received over two million visitors, more than double the amount in the same period last year. There was a 12, 3% increase in MICE (Meetings, Incentives, Conferences and Exhibitions) trips taken during January and March 2023.

South Africa has visa waivers for several African countries for a specified period and up to a maximum of 90 days, particularly in Southern African Development Community countries such as Tanzania, Namibia, Angola, Mozambique, Mauritius, Malawi and Botswana.

The e-visa system was initially launched for 14 countries and this was expanded to an additional 20 countries in 2023.

The implementation of the Tourism Sector Master Plan is expected to focus on enhancing destination marketing and working with all stakeholders including major global tech companies, the Tourism Business Council of South Africa, aviation sector, major hotel groups and the Township Tourism Associations, amongst others. Over the medium term, the department planned to continue its efforts to protect and reignite the demand for tourism to ensure that the sector lives up to its potential to contribute to South Africa's economic growth.

To do this, it intended to focus on enhancing growth and development in the sector, thereby contributing to broader economic growth; enhancing and maintaining core tourism assets and infrastructure while creating work opportunities; and supporting historically disadvantaged tourism enterprises.

Most of the department's activities are carried out through the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP), which, in the tourism sector, is aimed at enhancing

and developing tourism infrastructure through labour-intensive methods targeted at young people, women, unemployed people, people with disabilities and small, medium and micro enterprises.

The department aimed to implement spatial planning and infrastructure projects over the medium-term period to build capacity in township and rural economies, and is working to maintain infrastructure on properties managed by South African National Parks (SANParks).

These initiatives garner support for community-based projects and ultimately contribute to tourism development and work opportunities in rural areas. These projects are primarily funded through the Working for Tourism programme, which forms part of the EPWP, to enable the creation of a targeted work opportunities over the medium term.

Air access

Air access is another key priority for NDT to bring more direct flights to South Africa and ensure that the planes also leave the country with travellers in order to grow reciprocal relationships with countries around the world.

The African Union (AU) has also launched the Single African Air Transport Market, which aims to liberalise air transport on the continent and promote greater competition and connectivity. Air capacity has risen since 2022, with a 56% increase in the first quarter of 2023 compared to the same quarter in 2022. In 2023, the country reached 1.8 million seats, and South Africa welcomed around 23 new routes.

New direct flights, such as Cape Town to New York and Washington by United Airlines commenced in 2022 and Air China resumed its direct flight to OR Tambo International Airport in March 2023. The LATAM flight from Brazil to OR Tambo International Airport also contributes to South Africa's appeal.

Township tourism

The township tourism sector is a vital one for South Africa's economy and by mid-2023, the NDT was finalising plans to ensure all communities enjoy the full economic benefits of tourism.

The NDT planned to do this by broadening participation in the tourism value chain for South African Township and Village Tourism Association (SATOVITO) members and other businesses to develop new tour programmes into townships and villages while focusing on skills development and business acumen training.

SATOVITO is an inclusive organisation that aims to promote authentic, indigenous world standard tourism services and experiences.

It develops, represents and promotes township and village-orientated local, regional, provincial tourism association, businesses and indigents participating in the tourism sector. It aims to foster job creation by ensuring inclusive, sustainable development and transformation of the tourism sector, especially in townships and villages.

Tourism Sector Recovery Plan (TSRP)

The TSRP is in line with the Economic Reconstruction and Recovery Plan (ERRP) which was launched in November 2020. The ERRP aims to build a new economy and unlock South Africa's true economic potential.

It identified tourism as one of the priority areas of intervention in the ERRP, especially with infrastructure development, mass public employment, green economy interventions, the inclusion of women and youth, and skills development.

The TSRP has three strategic themes namely: Reigniting Demand, Rejuvenating Supply and Strengthening Enabling Capability.

The effective implementation of the TSRP is anchored on the following seven strategic interventions:

- Implement norms and standards for safe operation across the tourism value chain to enable safe travel and to rebuild traveller confidence;
- Stimulate domestic demand through targeted initiatives and campaigns;
- Strengthening the supply-side through resource mobilisation and investment facilitation;
- Support for the protection of core tourism infrastructure and assets;
- Execute a global marketing programme to reignite international demand;
- Tourism regional integration; and
- Review the tourism policy to provide enhanced support for sector growth and development.

Tourism Incentive Programme (TIP)

The TIP was established with the aim of stimulating growth and developing the tourism sector by providing financial assistance to privately owned tourism enterprises. The Market Access Support Programme offers partial financial support towards the cost of exhibition space, return airfare, hotel accommodation to qualifying small tourism enterprises that wish to participate and exhibit at selected tourism trade platforms.

The Tourism Grading Support Programme (TGSP) supports small tourism enterprises in gaining greater access to markets, and encourage participation in the tourism grading system respectively. These programmes have since been revised and refined, while two additional programmes, the Green Tourism Incentive Programme (GTIP) and the Tourism Transformation Fund (TTF) were added in 2017 and 2018 respectively to support the responsible tourism and transformation objectives of the department.

The TTF offers a combination of grant funding, debt finance and equity contributions to facilitate capital investment in new and expansion projects in the tourism sector.

Tourism Equity Fund (TEF)

In support of the objectives of enterprise development and transformation, the department will aim to fast-track the piloting of the TEF, which offers for capital investment in the form of grant funding to commercially viable black-owned

tourism enterprises. The TEF is intended to fast-track transformation within the tourism sector. The facility provides a combination of debt finance and grant to facilitate equity acquisition and new project development in the tourism sector by black entrepreneurs.

The fund will also seek to develop skills and ensure that the sector is sufficiently equipped to meet increased demand and expectations by implementing capacity-building programmes such as the wine service training programme, the hospitality youth programme, and food and beverage programmes.

Tourism Grading Support Programme

The TGSP is a joint initiative between NDT and the TGCSA under the broader TIP to encourage more accommodation and MESE (meetings, exhibitions, and special events) establishments to get graded and stay graded under the star grading system.

The programme aims to improve quality and standards of tourism offerings and gives discounts of up to 90% on grading assessment fees for new and renewal grading applications. This is an important incentive as it supports our quality assurance programme that enhances overall visitor experience without putting additional burden on small enterprises.

The department is expected to implement the Women in Tourism (WiT) Programme as a platform to drive initiatives that support the development and empowerment of women in the tourism sector. This platform recognises the challenges faced by women entrepreneurs who are often found at the bottom end of the tourism economic value chain.

Green Tourism Incentive Programme

The GTIP is a resource efficiency incentive programme of the NDT whose objective is to encourage and support private sector tourism enterprises to adopt responsible tourism practices by moving towards the sustainable management and usage of energy and water resources.

The GTIP was launched in 2017 and through grant funding, assists private sector tourism enterprises in reducing the cost of investing in energy and water efficient solutions.

Implementing GTIP funded interventions and identified solutions will not only ensure more responsible operations and environmental benefits, but after the projected payback period, the savings will continue to reduce the overall operational cost of the enterprise with direct and sustained benefits in terms of profitability and improved competitiveness.

The programme is managed by the Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) on behalf of the NDT and all applications and approvals are managed by the IDC. The GTIP broadly offers the following benefits to qualifying tourism enterprises:

- The full cost for a new resource efficiency audit or the full cost for reviewing an existing resource efficiency audit;
- Grant funding to qualifying small and micro enterprises on a sliding scale

from 50% to 90% of the total cost of implementing resource efficiency interventions, which is capped at R1 million; and

- Qualifying enterprises may implement projects in phases in order to better manage their cash flow over a two-year project implementation period.

South African Tourism

The Tourism Act of 2014 mandates SAT to market South Africa internationally and domestically as a preferred tourism and business events destination while monitoring and evaluating the performance of the tourism sector.

In support of this, over the medium-term period, the entity planned to continue prioritising support to domestic, regional and international tourism.

Over the period ahead, SAT planned to focus on efforts to bid to host events such as business meetings, conferences and exhibitions in rural areas and (small) towns to boost the tourism industry in six focal sectors: mining and minerals, manufacturing, travel and tourism, agriculture, finance, and wholesale and retail trade.

Ensuring that visitors enjoy their experience is a key component of the entity's work, and part of SAT's revitalisation plan entails assuring that tourism establishments are of a high standard.

TOURISM IN THE PROVINCES

WESTERN CAPE

With several local attractions and venues, the Western Cape is one of the domestic travel destinations in South Africa preferred by foreign tourists. The province is bordered by two oceans – the Indian Ocean to the south and the Atlantic Ocean to the west. It is also well known for its scenic beauty and a wealth of flora and fauna. With an abundance of hiking trails you have a choice between coastal or mountain hikes.

Key attractions

- Table Mountain, which forms part of the Table Mountain National Park, is one of the official New Seven Wonders of Nature, following a lengthy international public voting process. A modern cableway takes visitors to the top of the mountain, providing spectacular views.
- The Victoria and Alfred (V&A) Waterfront, the Company's Gardens, the District Six Museum, the houses of Parliament and the South African National Gallery.
- The Nelson Mandela Gateway to Robben Island is in the Clock Tower Precinct at the V&A Waterfront. It houses interactive multimedia exhibitions, an auditorium, boardrooms, the Robben Island Museum and a restaurant.
- The South African Rugby Museum in Newlands reflects the history of the sport as far back as 1891.
- Jazz is popular in Cape Town, ranging from traditional blues to African jazz.

The top jazz event in the Western Cape is the annual Cape Town International Jazz Festival, affectionately referred to as “Africa’s Grandest Gathering”.

- There are six very diverse regions, each offering a unique experience:

Cape Winelands

The Cape Winelands is known for some of the best wine in the world. It includes the towns of Stellenbosch, Franschhoek, Worcester, Robertson and Ceres.

The Karoo

The Karoo is distinctively divided into the Great Karoo and the Little Karoo by the Swartberg Mountain Range, which runs east-west, parallel to the southern coastline, but is separated from the sea by another east-west range called the Outeniqua–Langeberg Mountains. The Great Karoo lies to the north of the Swartberg range; the Little Karoo is to the south of it.

The Central Karoo features a semi-desert landscape in the centre of the province. It includes the towns of Prince Albert, Beaufort West, and Matjiesfontein; a town that’s a national monument due to the preservation of its Victorian Buildings

The Little Karoo’s fascinating landscape is fashioned almost entirely by water. Its vegetation ranges from lush greenery in the fertile river valleys to short, rugged Karoo plants in the veld. Gorges feature rivers that cut through towering mountains, while breathtakingly steep passes cross imposing terrain. The region is also home to the world’s largest bird – the ostrich.

Key attractions

- Excellent wines and port are produced in the Calitzdorp and De Rust areas.
- The Swartberg Nature Reserve and Pass with their gravel roads are also worth a visit.
- The Little Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees (National Arts Festival) is held in Oudtshoorn annually.
- The Cango Caves, a series of 30 subterranean limestone caves, bear evidence of early San habitation and features magnificent dripstone formations.
- Amalienstein and Zoar are historic mission stations midway between Ladysmith and Calitzdorp. Visitors can go on donkey-cart and hiking trails through orchards and vineyards. The Seweweekspoort is ideal for mountain biking, hiking, and protea and fynbos admirers.

City of Cape Town Metropolitan area

The City of Cape Town is best known as the Mother City and it’s the provincial capital and main city of the province.

Garden Route

The Garden Route stretches along the southern coast of the Western Cape. It includes Tsitsikamma National Park, Nature’s Valley, Knysna, Plettenberg Bay and Oudtshoorn.

Key attractions

- Attequas Kloof Pass, South African/Anglo-Boer War blockhouses and the Bartolomeu Dias complex. Great Brak River offers a historic village with many opportunities for whale- and dolphin-watching along the extensive coast. The Slave Tree in George, located just outside the Old Library, was planted in 1811. It is known to be the biggest English oak in the Southern Hemisphere.
- Bungee-jumping at the Gouritz River Gorge, hiking, mountain-biking and angling are popular pastimes.
- The Point in Mossel Bay is popular among surfers and its natural pool formed by rock is also a favourite swimming spot at low tide.
- Genadendal is the oldest Moravian village in Africa, with church buildings and a school dating back to 1738. The Genadendal Mission and Museum complex documents the first mission station in South Africa.
- Villiersdorp houses the Dagbreek Museum that dates back to 1845. The historical home, Oude Radyn, is possibly the only building in the Western Cape to have Batavian wooden gutters and down pipes.

Overberg

The Overberg is one of the best places in Africa to watch the southern right whale, one of South Africa's marine big five. The towns in this region include Hermanus, Cape Agulhas and Bredasdorp.

West Coast

The West Coast stretches along the Atlantic coast of the Western Cape. The West Coast is where you will find the Cederberg Wilderness Area. Towns in the area include Clanwilliam, Langebaan and Citrusdal.

NORTHERN CAPE

The Northern Cape is an excellent sandboarding destination and a number of local operators offer sandboarding lessons and tours. The dunes near Kakamas and Witsand are very popular and expert boarders and novices are more than welcome – boards can be rented on arrival.

Adventure-tour companies specialising in dune boarding in South Africa advise you to bring: a camera to record the inevitable antics, lots of sunscreen and a sense of humour. Some of the more enterprising companies turn it into a fun day, complete with children's dune boarding and picnics. This is a fun sport that will satisfy most peoples' need for speed.

Key attractions

- The Big Hole in Kimberley is the largest hand-dug excavation in the world. In 1871, diamonds were discovered at the site and mined manually by prospectors.
- The house where Sol Plaatje (African National Congress founding member and human rights activist) lived in Kimberley, has a library of Plaatje's and

other black South African writers' works, and several displays, including a portrayal of black involvement in the South African/Anglo- Boer War.

- Known as the “Oasis of the Kalahari”, Kuruman is blessed with a permanent and abundant source of water that flows from Gasegonyana (Setswana for “the little water calabash”) – commonly called the “Eye of Kuruman” – which yields 20 million litres of water a day. The Wonderwerk Cave at Kuruman features extensive San paintings that may be viewed by appointment.
- The Kalahari Raptor Centre cares for injured birds. Many of these majestic creatures can be seen at close quarters.
- Upington is the commercial, educational and social centre of the Green Kalahari, owing its prosperity to agriculture and its irrigated lands along the Orange River. A camel-and-rider statue in front of the town's police station pays tribute to the “mounties”, who patrolled the harsh desert territory on camels.
- Namaqualand is famous for a spectacular annual show in spring when an abundance of wild flowers covers vast tracts of desert.
- Namaqualand is also home to the Ais-Ais/Richtersveld National Park. It is managed jointly by the local Nama people and SANParks.
- De Aar is the most important railway junction in South Africa. The author Olive Schreiner lived in the town for many years. Visitors can dine in her former house, which has been converted into a restaurant.
- Hanover is known for its handmade shoes and articles made mostly from sheepskin and leather.
- Mattanu Private Game Reserve offers the ultimate Kalahari game experience – there are roan, sable, buffalo, golden oryx, golden gnu and many other types of antelope and wild animals. One can view the animals on a quad bike, safari vehicle or even by helicopter.

FREE STATE

This central region of South Africa is characterised by endless rolling fields of wheat, sunflowers and maize, and forms the principal bread basket of South Africa.

Key attractions

- With its King's Park Rose Garden containing more than 4 000 rose bushes, the Free State's major city, Bloemfontein, has rightfully earned the nickname “City of Roses.” The city also hosts an annual rose festival.
- Bloemfontein has a busy cultural and social-events calendar. One of the annual events is the Mangaung African Cultural Festival, popularly known as the Macufe Arts Festival, in September.
- The National Women's Memorial commemorates the women and children who died in concentration camps during the Anglo-Boer/South African War.
- The Gariep Dam, more than 100-km long and 15-km wide, is part of the Orange River Water Scheme, the largest inland expanse of water in South

Africa. The Gariep Dam Nature Reserve lies between the dam and Bethulie.

- Clocolan is known for the beauty of its cherry trees when they are in full bloom in spring. San rock paintings and engravings are also found in the area.
- The Llandaff Oratory in the nearby village of Van Reenen is believed to be the smallest Roman Catholic church in the world.
- At Harrismith, there are various memorials in honour of those who fought in the Anglo-Boer/South African War and World War I. Of particular interest is a memorial for the Scots Guards and Grenadier Guards.
- The Golden Gate Highlands National Park outside Clarens has beautiful sandstone rock formations.
- The Vredefort Dome, a World Heritage Site, is the oldest and largest meteorite impact site in the world. It was formed about two billion years ago when a giant meteorite hit Earth.

EASTERN CAPE

The Eastern Cape boasts a magnificent coastline that is complemented by more than 60 state-owned game reserves and over 30 private game farms, which collectively cover an area greater than the Kruger National Park.

Key attractions

- Gqeberha (formerly Port Elizabeth) has some beautiful parks with well-landscaped gardens, including St George's Park, which covers 73 ha.
- To the north-west of Graaff-Reinet lies the Valley of Desolation, which is a national monument within the Karoo Nature Reserve that was formed millions of years ago by weathering erosion.
- Varied game reserves, including the Addo Elephant, Mountain Zebra and Mkambati parks.
- South Africa's first marine park, the Tsitsikamma National Park extends along a rocky coastline of 50 km, and 3 km out to sea.
- Southern right and humpback whales and their calves are regularly spotted from the high dunes, usually between May and November, while common and bottlenose dolphins are often seen close to shore.
- The Camdeboo National Park, near Graaff-Reinet, was proclaimed as South Africa's 22nd National Park.

LIMPOPO

The Limpopo landscape is made up of dramatic contrasts characterised by hot savanna plains and mist-clad mountains, age-old indigenous forests and cycads alongside modern plantations, and ancient mountain fortresses and the luxury of contemporary infrastructure and modern-day facilities.

Key attractions

- The Marakele National Park is home to some rare yellowwood and cedar

trees and the world's largest colony of Cape vultures. It is also a leader in the conservation of the black rhino.

- Polokwane is considered the premier game-hunting destination in South Africa.
- The Mapungubwe Archaeological Site, about 80 km west of Musina, lies within the boundaries of the Mapungubwe National Park. It is one of the richest of its kind in Africa and a world heritage site. Excavations in the 1930s uncovered a royal graveyard, which included a number of golden artefacts, including the famous gold foil rhinoceros.
- The Kruger National Park (northern section) is one of South Africa's major tourist attractions. The park is home to a large number and wide variety of amphibians, reptiles and birds, as well as 147 mammal species, including the Big Five (African lion, African elephant, Cape buffalo, African leopard and black rhinoceros).

NORTH WEST

North West has several cultural villages that entertain and attract visitors. A number of excellent game reserves have been established, including the Pilanesberg National Park.

Key attractions

- The historic route of Mahikeng includes an South African/Anglo-Boer War siege site, the Molema House where Sol Plaatje lived while writing his Mafikeng Diary, and the Mahikeng Museum.
- The Groot Marico region is known as mampoor country and visitors can explore the Mampoor Route. The Kortkloof Cultural Village is dedicated to the Tswana people.
- Ottosdal is the only place in South Africa where the unique "wonderstone" or pyrophyllite, is found and mined.
- San rock engravings, Stone Age implements and structures are found on farms such as Witpoort, Gestoptefontein, Driekuil and Korannafontein.

MPUMALANGA

Mpumalanga means "the place where the sun rises" in the Nguni languages. The climate and topography vary from cool highland grasslands at 1 600 m above sea level, through the middleveld and escarpment, to the subtropical Lowveld towards the Kruger National Park and many private game reserves. Scenic beauty, climate and wildlife, voted the most attractive features of South Africa, are found in abundance in this province.

Key attractions

- Barberton features many reminders of the early gold-rush era. Museums include Belhaven, Fernlea House and Stopforth House. The only known verdite deposits in the world are found in the rocks of the Barberton district.

The annual Diggers Festival is held in September every year.

- The spectacular Blyde River Canyon is a 26-km-long gorge carved out of the face of the escarpment, and is one of the natural wonders of Africa. God's Window provides a magnificent panoramic view across miles of densely forested mountains, the green Lowveld and the canyon.
- Sabie is the centre of the largest man-made forest in South Africa and a popular destination among mountain bikers. The Cultural Historical Forestry Museum depicts various aspects of the country's forestry industry.
- The Bridal Veil, Horseshoe and Lone Creek waterfalls, and Mac Mac pools and falls just outside Sabie are well worth a visit. At the Montrose Falls in Schoemanskloof, the Crocodile River cascades into a series of rock pools.
- The region also holds rich historical sentiments centred on the monument of the late Mozambican President Samora Machel, constructed in the village of Mbuzini.
- The World Heritage Site, the Barberton Makhonjwa Mountains, comprises 40% of the Barberton Greenstone Belt, one of the world's oldest geological structures.

GAUTENG

'Gauteng' is a Sesotho word meaning "place of gold". It is the smallest province of South Africa and also the most populous and urbanized. It is characterised by a cosmopolitan mix of people from all walks of life.

Key attractions

- Natural areas include the Suikerbosrand Nature Reserve (Heidelberg); Braamfontein Spruit Trust, The Wilds on Houghton and the Klipriviersberg Nature Reserve in Johannesburg; the Kloofendal Nature Reserve and Walter Sisulu Botanical Gardens (in Roodepoort); and the National Botanical Garden, Smuts House Museum, and Freedom Park in Pretoria; as well as the Tswaing Crater.
- The Sterkfontein caves near Krugersdorp are the site of the discovery of the skull of the famous Mrs Ples, an estimated 2,5-million-year-old hominid fossil; and Little Foot, an almost complete hominid skeleton of more than 3,3 million years old.
- The Constitution Hill Precinct is set to become one of South Africa's most popular landmarks.
- A guided tour of Soweto leaves a lasting impression of this vast community's life and struggle against apartheid.
- The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg tells the story of the legacy of apartheid through photographs, film and artefacts.
- The Nelson Mandela Centre of Memory opened its doors to the public following the death of former President Nelson Mandela in December 2013.
- The Union Buildings celebrated its centenary in 2013. Designed by Sir Herbert Baker, construction started in 1910 and was completed in 1913. It

has since been the setting for presidential inaugurations. It is also the setting of many national celebrations, including Women's Day and Freedom Day. In December 2013, a bronze statue of former President Mandela was unveiled at the Union Buildings.

- The National Zoological Gardens in Pretoria is considered one of the 10 best in the world.
- The old mining town of Cullinan is where the world's biggest diamond, the 3 106-carat Cullinan diamond, was found.

KWAZULU-NATAL

One of the country's most popular tourist destinations, the province stretches from Port Edward in the south to the borders of Eswatini and Mozambique to the north.

Key attractions

- The Durban area has a significant number of reserves, developed parks and specialised gardens, the most renowned being the Municipal Botanical Garden.
- Annual events in and around the city include the popular Comrades Marathon between Durban and Pietermaritzburg, an international surfing competition, the Duzi canoe marathon, the Midmar Mile, Dolphin Mile open water swimming events and the Durban July Handicap horse race.
- The Weza State Forest in East Griqualand runs through indigenous forests and commercial plantations. The forest is home to several antelope species and a huge variety of birds.
- St Lucia and its surroundings comprise the iSimangaliso Wetland Park that have five separate ecosystems. It is a fishing and bird watching paradise. Boat trips on the lake offer opportunities for crocodile and hippo sightings. The Kosi Bay Nature Reserve is part of the Coastal Forest Reserve between Mozambique and Sodwana Bay.
- The Hluhluwe-Umfolozi Park, one of the largest game parks in South Africa, is home to the Big Five, as well as cheetah and wild dogs.
- The Battlefields Route in northern KwaZulu-Natal has the highest concentration of battlefields and related military sites in South Africa.
- The Midlands Meander is a scenic drive between Hilton and Mooi River, with some art studios, potters and painters, to herb gardens and cheese makers.
- Midmar Dam is zoned for yachting and power-boating while the 1 000-ha Midmar Game Park has rhino, zebra, a wide variety of antelope species and waterfowl.

Top-10 reasons to visit South Africa

- **Affordable** – In South Africa, you can even afford luxury and have spending money for shopping and other treats.
- **Natural beauty** – South Africa's scenic wonders are legendary. From Table

Mountain to God's Window, the mountains, forests, coasts and deserts will sooth your soul and delight you.

- **World-class facilities** – You will find it easy to get around, find a comfortable place to stay and have a great meal.
- **Adventure** – South Africa is the adventure capital of the world. With over 130 adventures, there is something for everyone from mountain walks to shark-cage diving.
- **Good weather** – In sunny South Africa with a great weather, you can enjoy the outdoors, play golf year-round and take advantage of the nearly 3 000 km coastline.
- **Rainbow Nation** – The Rainbow Nation celebrates all its African and immigrant cultures. South Africans are known for their friendliness and hospitality.
- **Diverse experiences** – Go almost anywhere in South Africa and experience the ultimate combination of nature, wildlife, culture, adventure, heritage and good vibe.
- **Wildlife** – The abundant and diverse wildlife include the Big Five (African lion, African elephant, Cape buffalo, African leopard and black rhinoceros).
- **Freedom Struggle** – Discover a nation's struggle for freedom whilst following the footsteps of Nelson Mandela, Hector Pieterse and many other celebrated revolutionaries.
- **Responsible tourism** – In South Africa you can travel with care as you explore protected areas, contribute to social and conservation projects, and collect arts and crafts.

Traveller's Guide:

Any person travelling in or out of the Republic of South Africa should unreservedly declare:

- All goods (including goods of another person) upon his person or in his possession which were purchased or otherwise acquired abroad or on any ship, vehicle or in any shop selling goods on which duty has not been paid; were remodelled, processed or repaired abroad, on arrival.
- Goods that are prohibited, restricted or controlled under any law;
- Goods that were required to be declared before leaving the Republic.

Before leaving, all goods which a traveller is taking with them beyond the borders of the Republic, including goods which are:

- Carried on behalf of another person;
- Intended for remodel, process or repair abroad;
- Prohibited, restricted or controlled under any law;
- Goods that a person, who temporarily entered the Republic, was required to declare upon entering the Republic.

Travellers must, upon request by a Customs Officer, provide the officer with full particulars related to the goods such as invoices, transport documents, proof of

payment to supplier, letter of authority and any permits applicable to such goods. Further, travellers must answer fully and truthfully all questions put to him by such officer and, if required by such officer to do so, produce and open such goods for inspection by the said officer, and shall pay the duty and taxes assessed by such officer, if any.

What are your Duty-Free allowances?

The duty-free allowance only apply to goods for personal use or to dispose of as gifts in accompanied travellers' baggage declared by returning residents and non-residents visiting the Republic.

The following imported goods declared by travellers in their accompanied baggage may be exempted from paying any import duties and Value-Added Tax (VAT):

- New or used goods of a total value not exceeding R5 000 per person;
- Wine not exceeding 2 litres per person;
- Spirituous and other alcoholic beverages, a total quantity not exceeding 1 litre per person;
- Cigarettes not exceeding 200 and cigars not exceeding 20 per person;
- 250 g cigarette or pipe tobacco per person;
- Perfumery not exceeding 50 ml and eau de toilette not exceeding 250 ml per person.

Wine, spirituous and other alcoholic beverages, tobacco products and perfumery imported in excess of the quantities specified must be cleared at the rates of duty specified in Schedule No.1 ("Tariff") to the Customs and Excise Act No.91 of 1964.

The aforementioned goods are commonly referred to as consumables or luxury goods and the rate of duty can be considerably high if travellers exceed the above quantities and must clear those excess quantities and pay the import duties at the rates of duty specified in the tariff.

Even if goods are bought at an inbound duty-free shop, the duty-free allowance still applies upon arrival.

Note: The duty-free allowance applicable to new or used goods to the value of R5000 per person, is applicable in addition to the duty free allowance applicable to consumable goods.

What is your flat-rate assessment allowance?

- If you have goods in excess of the R5 000 duty free allowance but not exceeding R20 000, you may elect to pay customs duty at a rate of full duty less 20% (flat-rate) with VAT exempted instead of clearing the goods at the rates of duty specified in Schedule No. 1 ("tariff") to the Customs and Excise Act of 1964;
- Goods in excess of the R20 000 flat-rate assessment threshold, pay import

duties and VAT in accordance with the Harmonised System description and originating status of goods.

Conditions for duty free allowances:

- The duty-free allowances related to new or used goods is only allowed once per person during a period of 30 days, following an absence of not less than 48 hours from South Africa;
- The flat rate assessment allowance is only allowed during a period of 30 days and shall not apply to goods imported by persons returning after an absence of less than 48 hours;
- The duty-free allowances related to wine, spirituous and other alcoholic beverages, tobacco products and perfumery is only allowed once per person during a period of 30 days, following an absence of not less than 48 hours from South Africa;
- The goods must be carried as accompanied baggage;
- The tobacco or alcoholic beverage allowance is not applicable to persons under the age of 18 years.

What about handmade articles?

- Travellers can import handmade articles of leather, wood, plastic, stone or glass of up to 25kg for commercial purposes without paying duties or taxes.

What about goods coming in temporarily?

- You may be required to lodge a cash deposit as security to cover potential import duty or VAT on certain articles imported temporarily. Your refund will be paid after confirmation that the goods have left the country.

To access the Customs external Policy Traveller Processing SC-PA-01-11 visit the Customs page on the SARS website www.sars.gov.za.

Prohibited and restricted goods

- SARS administers certain prohibitions and restrictions on behalf of a number of government departments, institutions and bodies
- Prohibited means the goods are not allowed to enter or exit South Africa
- Restricted means goods are allowed to enter or exit South Africa under certain conditions e.g. permit or certificate is required.

To access a list of “Prohibited and restricted goods SC-CC-32”, visit the Customs page on the SARS website www.sars.gov.za.

Note: Traders and Travellers must be aware of the Counterfeit Goods Act No. 37 of 1997, which states that goods of inferior quality made or sold under another brand, without the brand owners authorisation, is an infringement upon which civil and/or criminal proceedings may be taken against the offender.

Cash restrictions

- A traveller is allowed to declare and carry a maximum of R25 000/unlimited foreign currency, whether leaving or entering;
- A traveller shall declare whether or not he has with him any banknotes, gold, securities or foreign currency; and produce any bank notes, gold, securities or foreign currency which he has with him;
- The South African bank notes is unlimited if the traveller is going to / coming from a country within the Common Monetary Area (CMA);
- Travellers are advised to contact the South African Reserve Bank to obtain approval prior to taking cash across the borders of South Africa;
- Although there's technically no legal limit on how much money you can carry on a plane, if you are traveling internationally you must declare amounts of more than US\$10,000 on your customs form, and be prepared for possible interviews with customs or law enforcement to explain the amount of money you have with you.

Southern African Customs Union (SACU)

The countries that fall under the SACU are Lesotho, Namibia, South Africa, Botswana and Eswatini. Travellers from SACU member countries do not pay customs import duties and are entitled to a VAT exemption on goods up to a value of R5 000.

When do I register for a customs code?

- Before goods can be imported or exported, SARS may require a person or entity to formally license or register prior to conducting any activity regulated by the Act
- A person, including a traveller, who imports or exports goods of which the total value required to be declared is less than R150 000 during any calendar year is excluded from formal registration requirements.

Persons excluded from formal registration requirements may make use of the registration code 70707070 subject to the following conditions:

- He/she is a natural person;
- Enters the goods for home consumption, temporary export or export;
- Reflects in the field provided on the bill of entry or declaration form his or her:
 - o South African Revenue Service taxpayer reference number; or
 - o South African identity document number, in the case of a South African citizen or a permanent resident of the Republic, or passport document number in the case of a person who is not a South African citizen nor a permanent resident.

To register for a customs code

- You must complete the DA 185: Application form: Registration/Licensing of Customs and Excise clients, together with the relevant supporting annexure

to the DA 185; or

- Use the Electronic Registration System and complete the online version DA185 and the relevant online supporting Annexure.
- Please refer to the following External Policies on www.sars.gov.za:
 - o Customs Registration, Licensing and Designation SC-CF-19.
 - o Excise Licensing and Registration SE-LR-02.

Refund of tax on visitor's purchases

Value Added Tax (VAT) at a rate of 15% is levied on the purchase of most goods in South Africa. Tourists and foreign visitors to South Africa may make application at departure points for a refund of the VAT paid. The tax invoices/proof of payment for the purchases and the goods must be presented for inspection at the port of exit.

What happens if I have not complied with customs requirements?

SARS endeavours to educate and inform traders of their tax/duty obligations through various interventions, to help you to keep your tax affairs in order. Traders who are found to be non-compliant will be subjected to the Penal Provisions of the Customs and Excise Act of 1964, which includes a fine or criminal prosecution.



TRANSPORT

OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
SOUTH AFRICA

2022/23

Transport

Transport is essential for many aspects of daily life. It provides opportunities for people to gain access to jobs, business opportunities, leisure and social activities as well as vital services, social, education and health.

Furthermore, transport connects businesses with customers and suppliers. Transport networks are essential arteries of a vibrant economy, and a catalyst for development and economic growth.

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 identifies the legislative responsibilities of different spheres of government with regards to all modes of transport and associated infrastructure.

The Department of Transport (DoT) is responsible for the legislation and policies for rail, pipelines, roads, airports, harbours, and the intermodal operations of public transport and freight. As such, it conducts sector research, formulates legislation and policy to set the strategic directions of subsectors, assigns responsibilities to public entities, regulates through setting norms and standards, and monitors implementation.

Over the medium term, the DoT aimed to streamline efforts towards improving mobility and access to social and economic activities. It expects to achieve this by cultivating an enabling environment for the maintenance of national and provincial road networks, facilitating integrated road-based public transport services and revitalising passenger services.

The goods and services budget will mainly be used to fund the expansion of the central roads data repository, operational costs associated with the administration of the recapitalisation of taxis, and unitary payments towards building a tugboat for monitoring South Africa's coastlines under the department's maritime pollution prevention function.

Cultivating an enabling environment for maintaining road networks

The Road Transport programme facilitates activities related to maintaining the country's national and provincial road networks. Investments in road networks are targeted at ensuring that passengers and freight carriers, which haul almost 80 per cent of South Africa's freight load, have adequate access to safe roads.

The department has allocated funds over the next three years to construct, upgrade and maintain the national and provincial road networks. The South African National Roads Agency (SANRAL) planned to strengthen and upgrade the national non-toll network, and complete the N2 Wild Coast project, the R573 (Moloto Road) Development Corridor and the Gauteng Freeway Improvement Project.

Amongst the SANRAL's mega projects is the construction of the two iconic bridges, Msikaba Bridge, which is between Lusikisiki and Port St Johns in the Eastern Cape, being the highest, and the Mtentu Bridge, near Lundini also in the Eastern Cape, being the longest bridge, in Africa.

Government was also in the process to commence with construction work in the North Bound section of the 3.9 km-long Humeunot Tunnel, making it the

longest road-based tunnel in Africa. These SANRAL mega projects confirm the diverse engineering excellence and profound expertise found right here in South Africa.

The road maintenance component of the provincial roads maintenance grant provides for the maintenance and rehabilitation of the provincial road network to prolong its lifespan. Over the medium-term period, funds were allocated for road refurbishment, disaster relief and the construction of 96 bridges in rural areas. Provinces were expected to use funds from the grant to rehabilitate 9 893 lane kilometres, reseal 13 122 lane kilometres, regravell 19 355 kilometres and blacktop-patch 6.5 million square kilometres.

Facilitating integrated road-based public transport services

The DoT planned to achieve a seamless integration of all modes of public transport to deliver an efficient, safe and reliable public transport system. R60 million is set aside over the medium term to pilot the integration of all road-based public transport ticketing systems.

The public transport network grant funds the infrastructure and indirect costs of bus rapid transit services in 10 cities, including Cape Town, Ekurhuleni, George, Johannesburg, Nelson Mandela Bay and Tshwane.

Revitalising passenger rail services

To address the deterioration of passenger rail services, transfers to the Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa (PRASA) through the Rail Transport programme are focused on the recovery of the rail network.

The budget will be used for the agency's shift in focus towards implementing its strategic corridor recovery programme and continuing with its drive to renew rolling stock.

Refurbishment, rehabilitation and eradication of potholes

The work to improve the condition of the road network includes the refurbishment, rehabilitation and eradication of potholes, particularly in provincial and municipal roads. As part of this labour-intensive project, the department is working closely with the Transport Education Training Authority to develop requisite skills.

The department has also recognised the value of working with research institutions like the Centre for Scientific and Industrial Research for innovative solutions, like the nano technology solutions which were piloted in 2023 in the gravel road upgrade programme. The nano technology solutions will be used to upgrade gravel roads to a well-engineered and all-weather condition network.

Entities:

The 12 public entities under the Ministry of Transport are the Airports Company South Africa (ACSA); PRASA; SANRAL; Ports Regulator of South Africa (PRSA); Air Traffic and Navigation Services (ATNS); Cross-Border Road Transport Agency (CBRTA); Railway Safety Regulator (RSR); Road Accident Fund (RAF); Road Traffic

Infringement Agency (RTIA); Road Traffic Management Corporation (RTMC); South African Civil Aviation Authority (SACAA) and South African Maritime Safety Authority (SAMSA).

Airports Company South Africa

ACSA was established in terms of the Airports Company Act of 1993. The company owns and operates the nine principal airports in South Africa, including the three main international gateways – OR Tambo International Airport, Cape Town International Airport and King Shaka International Airport.

Over the medium term, the company aimed to focus on building and replacing infrastructure, and planned to invest approximately R1 billion in each year over the medium term on capital expenditure projects. This focus was deferred during the Coronavirus Disease 2019 (COVID-19) pandemic, which saw a significant decrease in commercial air travel, resulting in financial instability.

Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa

PRASA was established in terms of the Legal Succession to the South African Transport Services Amendment Act of 2008. Its primary mandate is to provide rail commuter services within, to and from South Africa in the public interest. The agency also provides long-haul passenger rail and bus services within, to and from South Africa.

Over the medium term, the agency aimed to focus on ensuring the recovery of commuter rail services by implementing its strategic corridor recovery programme and modernising its core infrastructure, which includes the replacement of old rolling stock and investment in signalling infrastructure.

As part of its strategic corridor recovery programme, the agency aims to restore services on Cape Town's central line and Tshwane's Mabopane line.

South African National Roads Agency Limited

SANRAL was established in terms of the SANRAL and National Roads Act of 1998. It is responsible for the planning, design, construction, operation, management, control, maintenance and rehabilitation of the South African national road network, including the financing of these functions, for both toll and non-toll roads.

Over the medium term, the agency aimed to continue focusing on the construction, maintenance and preservation of the national road network. It planned to increase the length of the network in active strengthening and resurfacing contracts from 1 500 kilometres in 2022/23 to 3 000 kilometres in 2025/26.

Ports Regulator of South Africa

The PRSA was established in terms of the National Ports Act of 2005 to regulate South Africa's ports infrastructure system. The regulator sets port tariffs for the National Ports Authority and oversees complaints and appeals to preserve

fairness, transparency and competitive practices for ports infrastructure. The PRSA continues to focus on strengthening the economic regulation of ports infrastructure and compliance with the ports regulatory framework over the medium term.

Air Traffic and Navigation Services

The ATNS Company is mandated to provide safe, orderly and efficient air traffic navigational and associated services to the air traffic management community in terms of the ATNS Act of 1993.

All its services are in accordance with the International Civil Aviation Organisation (ICAO) standards and the civil aviation regulations issued in terms of the Civil Aviation Act of 2009. The ATNS Company maintains its focus on providing safe, efficient and cost-effective air traffic management solutions and related services.

Cross Border Road Transport Agency

The CBRTA is mandated to regulate the cross-border road freight and passenger industry in terms of the Cross-Border Transport Act of 1998. Over the next three years, the agency planned to continue facilitate an unimpeded flow of freight and passenger road transport across the region. To this end, the CBRTA planned to conduct inspections to enforce cross-border road traffic law over this period.

Railway Safety Regulator

The RSR was established in terms of the National RSR Act of 2002. The regulator is mandated to oversee railway operations, monitor operators and enforce a safe operating environment. This includes rail operators from neighbouring countries with operations that enter South Africa.

Over the medium term, the regulator aimed to focus on its primary business of issuing safety permits to railway operators and conduct safety initiatives. These include education and awareness campaigns, community involvement programmes and training for safety ambassadors.

Road Accident Fund

In terms of the RAF Act of 1996, the RAF is mandated to compensate South African road users for losses or damages caused by motor vehicle accidents within the borders of South Africa. Over the medium term, a change in the settlement policy of loss-of-income claims from lump sum to annuity was expected to see a moderation in the payment of claims to match the fund's pay-as-you-go principle.

Road Traffic Infringement Agency

The RTIA derives its mandate from the Administrative Adjudication of Road Traffic Offences Act of 1998. The agency was established to administer procedures to discourage the contravention of road traffic laws, adjudicate infringements, enforce penalties for the contravention of road traffic laws, provide specialised

prosecution support services, and carry out community education and awareness programmes in road safety-related matters. The RTIA's activities over the medium term focused on administration, adjudication and support, and the roll-out programme.

Road Traffic Management Corporation

The RTMC was established through the RTMC Act of 1999. It is mandated to provide national road traffic strategic planning and law enforcement, and pool public sector resources for the provision of road traffic management.

Over the medium term, the corporation planned to promote road traffic safety through education and awareness campaigns, manage road traffic data and information through the automation of processes in driving licence testing centres, maintain the electronic national traffic information system, and improve the coordination of road traffic law enforcement.

South African Civil Aviation Authority

The SACAA was established in terms of the Civil Aviation Act of 2009. The authority is mandated to oversee the safety and security of the civil aviation industry and ensure compliance with and adherence to the standards and recommended practices of the ICAO.

Over the medium term, the SACAA aimed to focus on implementing safety and security programmes in line with the standards and recommended practices issued by the organisation and civil aviation regulations in South Africa. Accordingly, it planned to conduct air safety infrastructure investigations and air safety operation inspections per year over the medium-term period.

South African Maritime Safety Authority

The SAMSA was established in terms of the SAMSA Act of 1998. The authority is mandated to ensure the safety of life and property at sea, and prevent and combat marine pollution. Over the next three years, the authority aimed to continue focusing on ensuring safety and preventing pollution at sea.

Projects:

National Transport Master Plan (NATMAP)

The NATMAP 2050 is aimed at delivering a dynamic, long-term and sustainable transportation system framework which is demand responsive and that provides a coordinated transport agenda for the whole country. The NATMAP recognises that efficient, affordable and reliable transport systems are critical components of national economic development.

National Airspace Master Plan (NAMP) 2020-2025

The NAMP 2020-2025 provides the strategic view and direction of airspace organisation and management within South Africa.

The objectives of the NAMP are to:

- service the airspace in accordance with ICAO Standards and Recommended Practices (SARPS) in such a way that it meets the requirements of all users and particularly, the international community.
- rationalise all managed airspace in accordance with ICAO SARPS in such a way that it meets the requirements of all users by a consultative process, strategically and tactically.
- minimise all permanent prohibited, restricted and danger areas in accordance with ICAO SARPS and to facilitate the flexible use of airspace to the benefit of all users.
- continually maintain information (uncontrolled) airspace in accordance with ICAO SARPS in such a way that it meets the requirements of all users.

Aviation

Civil aviation serves as a major catalyst for global economic activities and is vital to trade and tourism. South Africa's major airports include:

- OR Tambo International in Gauteng
- Cape Town International in the Western Cape
- King Shaka International in KwaZulu-Natal
- Bram Fischer International in the Free State
- Chief Dawid Stuurman International in the Eastern Cape
- Upington International in the Northern Cape
- King Phalo Airport in the Eastern Cape
- George Airport in the Western Cape
- Kimberley Airport in the Northern Cape
- Polokwane International Airport in Limpopo
- Kruger Mpumalanga International Airport in Mpumalanga.

Public transport

Scholar Transport

The National Scholar Transport Policy provides a framework for safe and secure transport for learners through the cooperation of stakeholders and law-enforcement authorities. The DoT developed the national operational guidelines to remedy operational challenges that provinces have in implementing the Scholar Transport Programme.

The DoT continues to make a difference in the lives of many learners in rural and farmland areas through the Shova Kalula initiative, which supplies learners with non-motorised mobility in the form of bicycles.

Taxi and bus industries

The taxi industry remains the most important part of South Africa's public transport system. Taxis are the preferred type of road transport. With more than 200 000 taxis on the road, the taxi industry generates about R40 billion per year and has created approximately 300 000 direct and indirect job opportunities,

including drivers, taxi marshals and administrative support. The Taxi Relief Fund secured by the DoT to mitigate the negative financial impact of COVID-19 on the minibus taxi industry came to an end on 31 March 2023. About R440 million has been disbursed, accounting for over 80 000 operating licences.

Integrated public transport networks (IPTNs)

The implementation of the IPTNs in the country is central to the functioning of hubs of economic activity as they provide sustainable, affordable and functional transport solutions to urban commuters.

By mid-2023, seven cities were already operational:

- MyCiTi in Cape Town, Western Cape.
- Rea Vaya in Johannesburg, Gauteng.
- A Re Yeng (Let's go) in Pretoria, Gauteng.
- Go George in George, Western Cape.
- Harambee in Ekurhuleni, Gauteng.
- Libhongolethu in Nelson Mandela Bay, Eastern Cape.
- Leeto la Polokwane in Polokwane, Limpopo.

Gautrain

The Gautrain is an 80-km long mass rapid transit railway system that links Johannesburg, Pretoria and OR Tambo International Airport. It was built to relieve traffic congestion in the Johannesburg-Pretoria traffic corridor and offer commuters a viable alternative to road transport, as Johannesburg had limited public transport infrastructure.

The Gautrain offers two distinct train services: An Airport Service linking Sandton and Marlboro to the OR Tambo International Airport and a Commuter Service linking Rhodesfield, Marlboro, and Sandton (east-west link) and Park, Rosebank, Sandton, Midrand, Centurion, Pretoria Central and Hatfield (north-south link). All stations with the exception of the Airport Station have integrated car parking facilities.

Maritime

South Africa has three thousand (3000) kilometers coastline, correctly positioned along the sea trading route. We have the world's largest bulk coal terminal port in Richard Bay. Durban Port is the busiest in Africa and the largest container facility in Southern Africa.

The Port of Ngqura is the deepest container terminal in Africa. The Port of Cape Town is the biggest refrigerated container facility in Africa. Saldhana Bay is the largest port in Africa by water footprint. South Africa is among the top 15 countries that trade by sea.

SAMSA has since rolled out the Maritime Safety Programme with specific focus on ship safety inspection programmes which have resulted to no reported ship losses in South Africa's waters.

National Road Safety Strategy (NRSS) 2016-2030

Road safety has become a global issue that ranks as one of the most pressing matters facing society today. South Africa implemented various strategies and campaigns in the past, with varying degrees of success in slowing down the rate of fatalities over time.

The objective of the NRSS is to create a safer road environment for all users with a significant reduction in the number of injuries and fatalities due to road crashes.



**WATER AND
SANITATION**

**OFFICIAL GUIDE TO
SOUTH AFRICA**

2022/23

Water and Sanitation

South Africa is a water-scarce country. The country has an average rainfall of 465 mm, which is half the world average and there is also a very high evaporation rate. Consequently, the potential of the country to further develop its surface water resources is limited – in fact, approximately 75% of its exploitable surface water resources is already being harnessed.

Untreated or ‘raw’ water supply availability is currently roughly in balance with existing demands on a national scale, but there are localised deficits and surpluses. Raw water availability in South Africa could, however, rapidly deteriorate as demand escalates due to both economic and population growth.

In addition, there are factors which could result in a contraction of supply, such as increasing physical losses in municipal distribution systems, degradation of wetlands and the impact of climate change.

The mandate of the Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS), as set out in the National Water Act of 1998 and the Water Services Act of 1997, is to ensure that the country’s water resources are protected, managed, used, developed, conserved and controlled by regulating and supporting the delivery of effective water supply and sanitation.

This is done in accordance with the requirements of water-related policies and legislation that are critical in delivering on people’s right to have enough food and water, growing the economy, and eradicating poverty.

Over the medium term, the department planned to continue focusing on improving the regulation of water quality; implementing the integrated water resource management approach aimed at the protection, use, development, conservation, management and control of water resources while supporting government’s developmental priorities; and facilitating the improved management of municipal water services.

The DWS has established a Water Partnerships Office in partnership with the Development Bank of Southern Africa and South African Local Government Association to assist municipalities to package bankable projects to take to the market, focusing on projects such as the reduction of non-revenue water and water reuse.

Water quality regulation and access

The DWS enforces regulatory measures that ensure the provision of safe water and the effective management of wastewater. To this end, it implements the green and blue drop certification programmes, which are incentive-based regulatory tools that measure the capacity and environmental, financial, technical and quality compliance of water service institutions.

The department planned to assess wastewater systems for compliance with the green drop regulatory requirements and water supply systems for compliance with blue drop regulations.

To improve equitable access to water resources, the department planned to finalise 80% of water use authorisation applications within 90 days of application.

South Africa has expanded access to water to more than 89% of all South Africans and 84% have access to sanitation services.

Integrated water resource management

In its efforts to ensure water security, the DWS planned to continue adopting an integrated approach to maintaining existing water resource infrastructure, supplying bulk water to strategic users such as large industrial companies through the Water Trading Entity, and supporting the long-term sustainability of water resources.

As such, the department will consider the impact of climate change, the role of ecosystems, rainwater runoff and storage, the use of other water resources such groundwater and aquifer systems, water conservation and water demand management plans.

The department also planned to implement and monitor the river eco-status monitoring programme in rivers and implement catchment plans for mine water and wastewater management.

Improving water services

To improve water services, over the medium term, the department planned to ensure reliable water and sanitation services by overseeing large regional bulk infrastructure project phases and small regional infrastructure project phases.

National Water and Sanitation Master Plan (NW&SMP)

By mid-2023, the DWS was leading the initiative to develop the NW&SMP, which is intended to guide the water sector with investment planning for the development of water resources and the delivery of water and sanitation services over the horizon until 2030, and beyond. This development is a first for South Africa.

The core purpose of the NW&SMP is to provide an overall perspective of the scope of the water and sanitation business to provide a comprehensive schedule of actions needed to address present challenges, to estimate the investments required to ensure effective water resources, and water and sanitation services delivery, as well as to facilitate effective integrated investment planning, implementation of actions and evaluation of achievements.

The master plan identifies key actions in the water sector and allocates roles and responsibilities to all in the water sector, from the various tiers of government, the private sector and other stakeholders for the implementation of the plan.

The NW&SMP will include a list of key programmes, projects and actions to be implemented for the protection and development of the national water resources, and for the provision of adequate and reliable water and sanitation services for all citizens. It will also address the enabling requirements, such as the institutional and legal arrangements for implementation, operation and maintenance, funding requirements and models, and monitoring and evaluation models.

National Water Resources Infrastructure Agency (NWRIA)

By mid-2023, the South African NWRIA SOC Limited Bill had been submitted to Parliament. The NWRIA is expected to leverage large-scale investments in national water resource infrastructure that are required to ensure that South Africa has sufficient bulk water supply now and in future.

The augmentation projects, establishment of the NWRIA and interventions are intended to ensure that the supply of water does not become a binding constraint to economic growth.

They are also aimed at ensuring that challenges with municipal water and sanitation service delivery are not exacerbated by a shortage of bulk water, as has happened in the cities of Cape Town and Nelson Mandela Bay, amongst others.

Drinking water

In 2022, over four-fifths (82,4%) of households in the country had access to piped water either inside their dwelling or inside their yard, according to Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) Census 2022.

There is an increase in the proportion of households that had access to piped water inside their dwelling, from 32,3% in 2001 to 46,3% in 2011 and to 59,7% in 2022. The proportion of households that accessed piped water off-site (from a water source outside the yard such as a neighbour or from a community stand) halved from 17,9% in 2011 to 8,9% in 2022.

Households in the Western Cape were more likely to have piped water inside their dwelling (85,5%) compared to Limpopo, where less than one-third (31,4%) accessed piped water inside their dwelling. Although the national picture regarding access to piped water shows improvement over the years, there is a sizeable proportion of households in Limpopo (20,5%) and Eastern Cape (19,5%) with no access to piped water.

Households in the Western Cape (27,7%) and Gauteng (40,5%) reported the lowest proportions of water interruptions, below the national average of 48,4%. In contrast, a significantly larger proportion of households in Mpumalanga (60,9%), North West (65,2%) and the Northern Cape (65,8%) reported experiences of interruptions.

World Water Day and Week

World Water Day takes place annually on 22 March to underline the importance of fresh water.

The DWS also held the National Water Week campaign from 20 to 26 March 2023 to educate the public about their responsibility in water conservation initiatives, raising awareness around the need to protect and conserve the country's water resources. The celebrated National Water Week under the theme "Accelerating Change" and urged everyone to use water sparingly to ensure Water For All.

Sanitation

There has been an increase in the percentage of households that used a flush toilet as their main type of toilet facility during this period (+18,9 percentage points), according to Stats SA's Census 2022.

However, the percentage of households that used a pit toilet without ventilation and households with no form of toilet facility declined during the same period, from 22,8% to 12,5% and from 13,6% to 1,6% respectively.

Households that resided in more urban provinces such as Western Cape (93,9%) and Gauteng (89,7%) had access to flush toilets. Northern Cape still had 4,5% of households that used bucket toilets. The majority of the households in Limpopo, i.e. more than half (57,9%), used a pit latrine with/without ventilation pipe as their main type of toilet facility.

Although 58,9% of the households in KwaZulu-Natal used flush toilets, 28,5% used pit latrines with/without ventilation pipe and 7% used chemical toilets. Some households in the Northern Cape and Eastern Cape reported no type of toilet facility, at 4,5% and 3% respectively.

Bucket eradication

Government started a 'bucket eradication' programme in 2012, focusing on projects to replace buckets with waterborne sanitation in the Eastern Cape, Free State, Northern Cape and North West.

The project was delayed, partly because of the sanitation function being transferred between departments on several occasions, and the programme being repeatedly transferred between different implementing agents appointed by the different departments.

The project has also been delayed because there was inadequate engineering planning and design for the required upgrading of wastewater treatment works to receive additional sewage from the new household waterborne sanitation connections.

By mid-2023, all the elements of the original programme had been completed, apart from one project in the Northern Cape and eight projects in the Free State. These were expected to be completed during the 2023/24 financial year. In reality, the programme will not 'eradicate' buckets because municipalities are continuously initiating new bucket systems in informal settlements.

To address this, the DWS has developed a National Sanitation Framework, which has recently been approved by Cabinet. In terms of the framework, the department planned to issue revised norms and standards for sanitation services under the Water Services Act of 1997, which will make it clear that it is unacceptable for municipalities to implement the bucket system.

The planned amendments to the Water Services Act of 1997 will also enable the department to regulate and ensure adherence to these norms and standards.

Lesotho Highlands Water Project (LHWP)

By mid-2023, Phase Two of the LHWP, which will augment water supply to Gauteng by 490 million m³ and some areas of the Free State, Northern Cape and North West, was being implemented.

The project will increase water security in the Integrated Vaal River System, which is the primary water resource for the Gauteng economy. The main contracts for the Polihali Dam, the Polihali to Katse Transfer Tunnel and the Senqu Bridge were awarded during the last financial year and contractors are on site.

The estimated cost of Phase Two is R39 billion, with the Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority (TCTA) raising the funding in the market and it is due to be completed by 2028.

Entities:

Consolidated water boards

Water boards were established by the Water Services Act of 1997 to provide support to municipalities by providing bulk water treatment and water distribution infrastructure.

The water boards vary in size, activities, customer mix, revenue base and capacity. Some water boards provide retail water and sanitation services on behalf of municipalities. Rand Water and Umgeni Water serve largely urban areas. The rest of the water boards operate largely in the rural areas.

Rand Water

Rand Water is the largest bulk water utility in Africa and is one of the largest in the world, providing bulk potable water to more than 11 million people in Gauteng, parts of Mpumalanga, the Free State and North West – an area that stretches over 18 000 km².

It operates 13 tertiary pumping stations and 60 strategically located service reservoirs and secondary booster stations; as well as multibillion Rand regional pipeline network of approximately 3 500 km.

In March 2023, Rand Water unveiled the new 210 megalitre post-tensioned concrete Vlakfontein Reservoir in Benoni, Ekurhuleni, which is considered to be largest cylindrical post-tensioned reservoir in the country and also the largest circular post-tensioned reservoir in the world.

Umgeni Water

Umgeni Water was established in terms of the Water Services Act of 1997 to provide water and sanitation services in its service area, which comprises mostly rural areas in KwaZulu-Natal and the eThekweni metropolitan area. The water board supplies water to approximately six million consumers. Its ongoing objective is to support.

Magalies Water

Magalies Water provides quality bulk water and secondary services directly to municipalities, mines and other industries which in turn helps to grow the economy and improve the lives of communities. Raw water is drawn from the rivers which flow into dams that are owned by the DWS and Magalies Water buys the water from the department. Water from the dams is channelled to Magalies Water's four water-treatment plants where the water is treated and made safe for public consumption. Municipalities draw the water provided by Magalies Water through the reservoir and provide it to consumers for household use.

Bloem Water

Bloem Water (formerly Bloem Area Water Board) was established in 1991 with the aim to operate the Caledon/Bloemfontein Government Water Scheme as well as supplying water to the municipal areas of Bloemfontein, Bainsvlei, Bloemspruit, Botshabelo and Dewetsdorp.

Amatola Water

Amatola Water was established in 1998 to provide bulk-water services in the Eastern Cape. It is committed to ensuring that the Eastern Cape communities have access to basic water services as this is a right enshrined in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996.

Mhlathuze Water (MW)

MW was established in 1980 and predominantly operates in the uMkhanyakude, King Cetshwayo and Zululand district municipalities but has plans to expand beyond these districts. MW is supplied by three dominant water sources namely: Mhlathuze River, Lake Mzingazi and Lake Nsezi. The organisation's business activities include raw (untreated), clarified (partially treated) and purified water supply; disposal of industrial and domestic waste water and scientific services.

Lepelle Northern Water (LNW)

The mandate of LNW is to provide bulk-water services to water services authorities and industries within Limpopo. It is actively involved in schemes serving more than three million people as well as some major industrial users. LNW will continue to partner with the DWS in implementing Water Conservation and Demand Management as well as groundwater exploration to augment the surface water.

Overberg Water

Overberg Water came into being in 1993 when the former Duivenhoks and Rûensveld water boards amalgamated. It distributes water to the surrounding and rural areas of Cape Agulhas, Theewaterskloof and Swellendam. It has three water-treatment schemes with 22 reservoirs which are strategically located across the Overberg region. The water board derives its revenue from the sale of

bulk potable water to its main customers, namely municipalities, as well as retail sales to the agricultural sector/industry in the region.

The organisation supplies and distributes approximately four million cubic metres of water per year. The region currently supplied covers approximately 6 000 square kilometres with a pipeline network estimated at 1 450 kilometres.

Other entities:

- The **Breede-Gouritz Catchment Management Agency** was established in terms of the National Water Act of 1998. The agency plays an important role in protecting, using, developing, conserving, managing and controlling water resources in a cooperative manner within the boundaries of the Breede-Gouritz catchment area.
- The **Inkomati-Usuthu Catchment Management Agency** was established in 2004 in terms of the National Water Act of 1998. The agency plays a key role in the use, protection and development of water resources in the Inkomati-Usuthu water management area, and aims to ensure that water is used and managed to support equitable and sustainable socio-economic transformation and development.
- The **Water Research Commission** was established in terms of the Water Research Act of 1971. It is mandated to conduct research in the water sector by determining needs and priorities for research; promoting coordination, cooperation and communication in the area of water-research development; stimulating and funding water research; promoting the effective transfer of information and technology; and enhancing knowledge and building capacity in the water sector.
- The **Water Trading Entity** was established in 1983 and was converted into a trading entity in terms of the Public Finance Management Act of 1999 in 2008. The entity's primary role is to manage water infrastructure and resources, and the sale of raw water.
- The **TCTA** was established in 1986 as a specialised liability management entity, deriving its mandate from the National Water Act of 1998. It is responsible for financing and implementing the development of bulk raw water infrastructure and providing treasury management services to the DWS. The authority plays an important role in providing: financial advisory services such as structuring and raising project finance, managing debt and setting tariffs; project implementation services; and other technical support to the department and water boards.